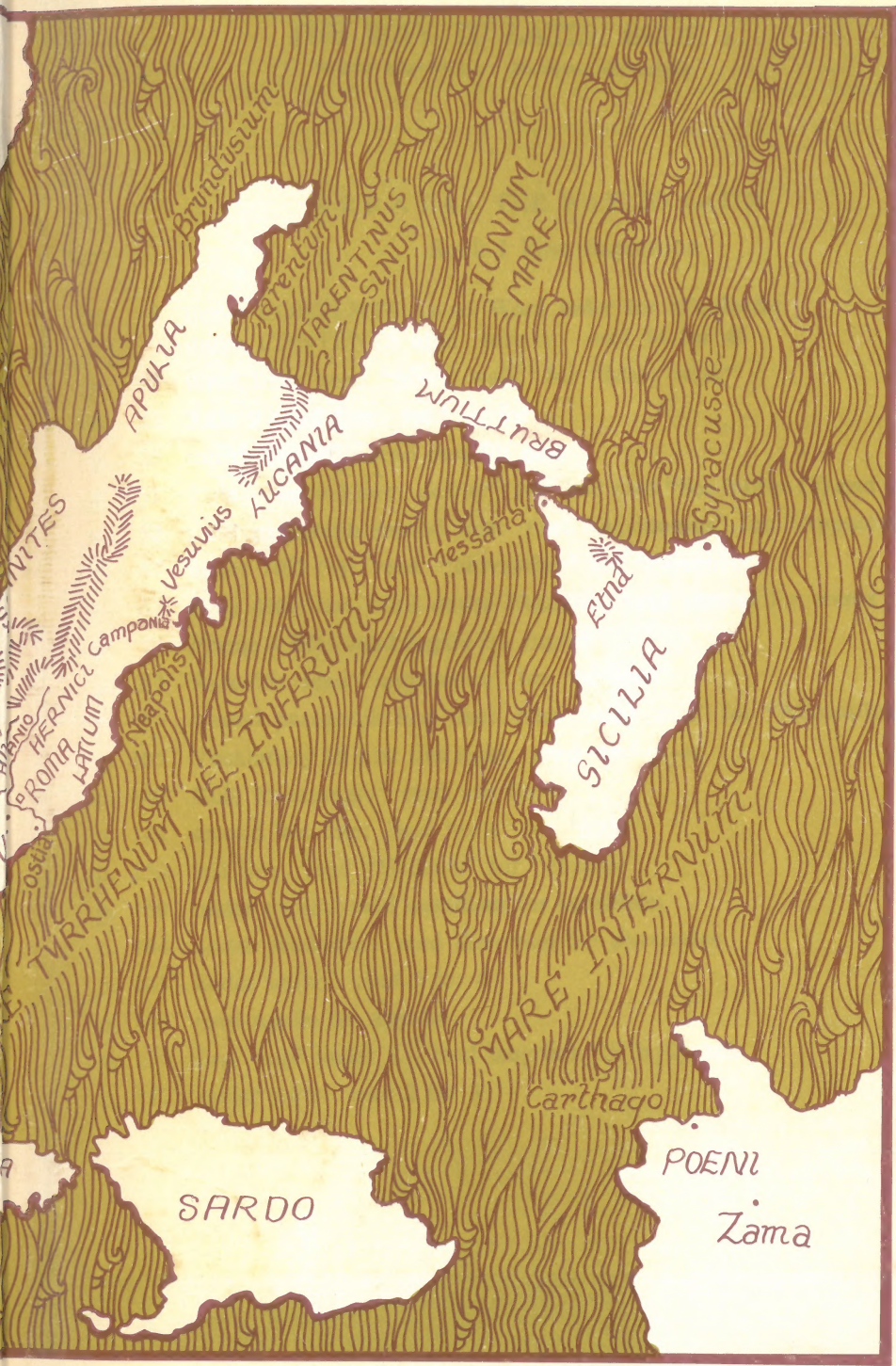


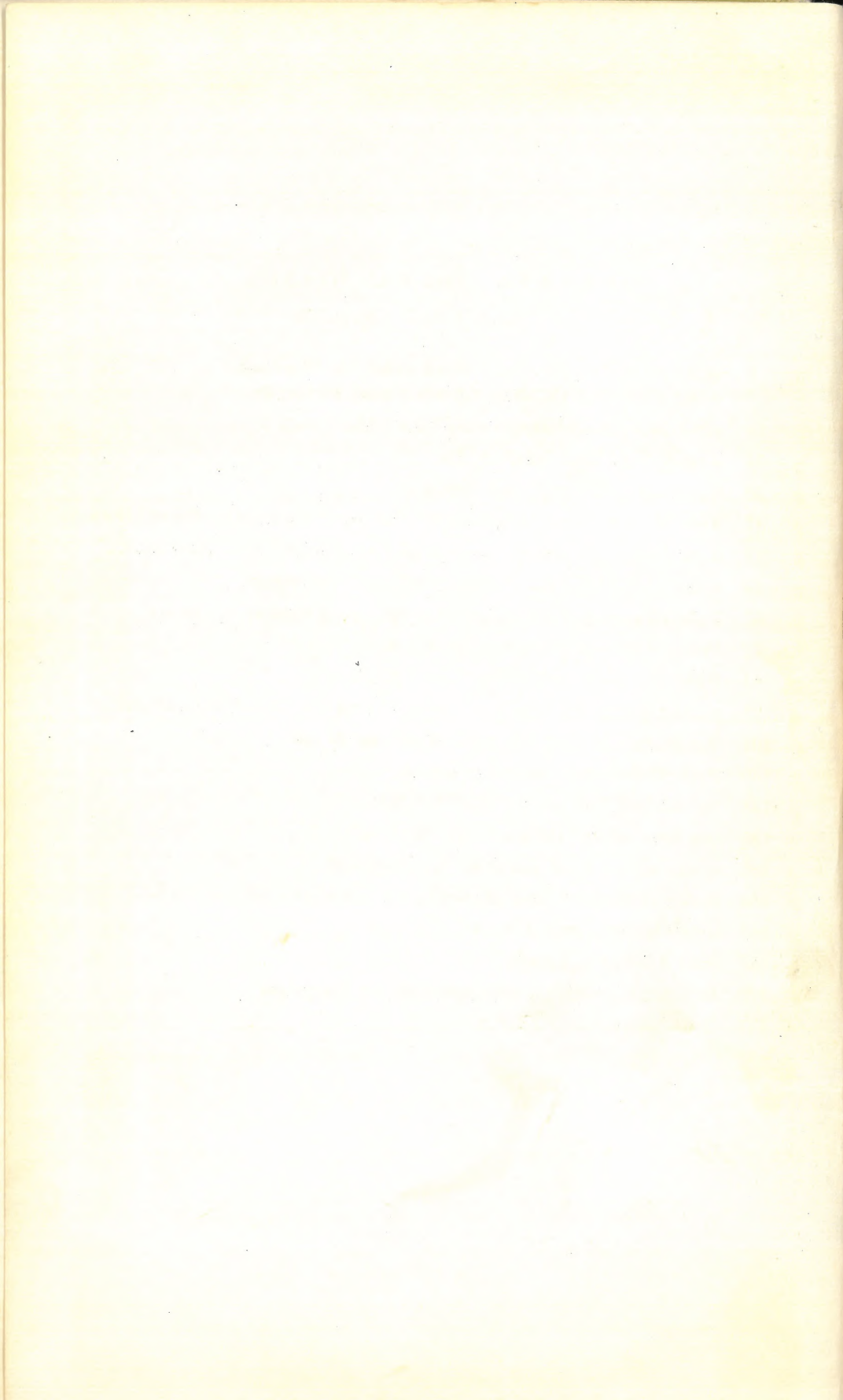
Book 1
C.S. Heyneke
H. Cunningham

The way to Latin

ITALIA







THE WAY TO LATIN: BOOK I

a new approach · grammar and reader

ERRATA: THE WAY TO LATIN

Book I First Impression

- p. 6 under CONTENTS: read **Word order** for **Wordorder**
under CONTENTS after *Adverbs*: read **14** for **46**
- p. 18 ninth line: read "Mary, walk" for "Mary walk"
- p. 22 Rule 9 third line: read *-a*, for *-*,
- p. 26 fourth line left: read **casa** for **case**
- p. 51 Rule 34 second line: delete ", (4)" and read "See frames (3) and (5) above"
- p. 52 third paragraph second line: read "Apollonius" for "Appolonius"
- p. 57 under 10D (1): read "November" for "Novenber"
- p. 62 Rule 43(a) last word under Example: read **monent** for **monet**
- p. 72 Frame 4 left: read fugāre for fugarē
- p. 83 Rule 55: read "preposition" for "position"
- p. 95 second paragraph first line: read "Alimentus" for "Alimenthus"
- p. 105 Vocabulary 19 first line right: read *-ae* for *-ea*
- p. 140 Rule 95 example: read *was* for *is*
- p. 148 second last line: read "title" for "little"
- p. 150 last line: read "Hellenic" for "Helenic"
- p. 160 under capio: read **consilium** for **consillium**
- p. 164 under prudentia: read *discretion* for *discreation*
- p. 165 under scribo: read **3** for **4**
- p. 167 read **Apollo** for **Appollo**
- p. 170 first word under L: read **labyrinth** for **laybyrinth**
- p. 172 under scare: read **2** for **3**



The temple of Vesta (Rome) seen through the arch of Janus
— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

The Way to Latin

Book 1

a new approach grammar and reader

C. S. HEYNEKE, M.A. (RAND)

*Inspector of Education
Transvaal Education Department*

H. CUNNINGHAM, B.A. (RAND)

*Principal
Dawnview High School, Primrose*



1970

VOORTREKKERPERS

Published by:
VOORTREKKERPERS

Distributed by:
TRANSVALER-BOEKHANDEL
Johannesburg, Pretoria and Klerksdorp
UNION BOOKSELLERS
Pretoria and Vereeniging

Educational institutions may obtain separate sets of Control Cards for Sections B and D of each unit from the publishers.

© Copyright

CONTENTS

A. GRAMMAR AND SYNTAX

All references are to Rules except where pages are specifically quoted.

- Ablative** — see Cases
Accusatives — see Cases
Adjectives 38, 39, 40, 41, 61
 Declension of 42, 59, 76, 77
 Substantival use 61a
 with et 61b
Adverbs 14
Analysis of a simple sentence 18
Appendix A
 Additional reading p. 147
Appendix B
 Declensions and conjugations p. 154
Apposition 83
Articles 10
Cardinal numbers — see Numerals
Cases
 Nominative 7, 8
 Vocative 12, 13, 64a, 65, 72
 Accusative 17, 19, 21, 47, 52, 53, 58, 75
 Motion towards 21, 22, 75
 Prepositions with 20, 21, 22, 56, 75
 Time how long 53
 Genitive 26, 27, 64b, 81
 Dative 30, 31, 67
 Ablative 35, 36, 37, 49, 60
 Instrument 36
 Place from which 49
 Time when 60
Conjugations — see Verbs
Conjunctions 23
 dum 44, 57
 quod 29
 si 34
 ubi, postquam, simulac 25, 34
Copulative verb sum 94 — 99
Date the Roman way p. 55
Dative — see Cases
Demonstrative pronouns — see Pronouns
Future Perfect — see Tenses
Future Simple — see Tenses
Genitive — see Cases
Imperatives 90 — 93
Imperfect — see Tenses
Infinitive, prolativ, 46
Inflexions 1, 9, 73, 74
Locative 50
Motion towards 21, 22, 75
Nominative — see Cases
Nouns 5, 6, 9
 1st Declension 8, 13, 19, 27, 31, 37, 66
 2nd Declension 45, 51, 64, 65, 70
 Plural nouns 89
 Uses — see Cases
Numerals
 Cardinal numbers (1 — 10) 84 — 86
Object 17
Perfect — see Tenses
Personal pronouns — see Pronouns
Place from which 49
Place where 50
Pluperfect — see Tenses
Prepositions
 with acc. 20, 21, 22, 56, 75
 with abl. 35, 48, 55, 78
Present — see Tenses
Prolative infinitive 46
Pronouns 1, 5, 9
 Demonstrative 79 — 82
 Personal 71 — 74
 with cum 78
Subject 7
Substantival use of adjective 61a
Sum — see Copulative verb sum
Tenses, indicative active
 Present 2, 43a, 62a, 87a
 Imperfect 11, 43b, 62b, 87b
 Future Simple 15, 34, 43c, 62c, 87c
 Perfect 24, 25, 54a, 68a, 87d
 Pluperfect 28, 29a, 54b, 68b, 87e
 Future Perfect 32, 33, 34, 54c, 68c, 87f
Time
 how long 53
 when 60
Verbs 1, 4, 5, 17, 30, 46, 47, 52, 58, 67
 Conjugations, indicative active — see also
 Tenses
 1st 2, 3, 11, 15, 24, 28, 33
 2nd 43, 54
 3rd 62, 68, 69
 4th 87, 88
 Sum: 94
Vocabularies, general
 Latin — English p. 159
 English — Latin p. 167

Vocative — see Cases

Wordorder

Adjectives 41

Adverbs 46

Dative of indirect object 30, 67

Genitive noun 26

Personal pronouns 72

with cum 78

Prepositions 21, 56

Subject 7

Sum 99

Verb 4

B. READING

	Page
Preface	9
Pronunciation of Latin	11
Unit	
1a My first Latin Lesson	13
1b In the Latin Class	14
2 A beautiful City	16
3 Lauretta and Veronica	21
4 A busy Family	25
5 The Sailor	29
6 Caesar in Britain	33
7 Caesar in Britain	40
8 Latona is blessed with a daughter	45
9 Julius Caesar punishes the Pirates	50
10 Writing the date the Roman way	55
11 Angela's Cottage	58
12 Pirates are changed into Dolphins	62
13 Daedalus and Icarus: the first men to fly	68
14 The siege of Troy	74
15 The Death of Patroclus	81
16 The Wooden Horse of Troy	87
17 The Story of Rome I	93
<i>Extent of Rome</i>	
<i>Legendary origin of Rome</i>	
<i>Facts on the founding of Rome</i>	
<i>The Struggle of the Orders</i>	
18 Aeneas escapes from Troy	98
19 The founding of Rome by Romulus	104
20 The Sabine women are abducted	110
21 Croesus and the oracle of Delphi	116
22 The Story of Rome II	123
<i>Horatius Cocles</i>	
<i>Coriolanus</i>	
<i>The siege of Veii</i>	
<i>Rome sacked by the Gauls</i>	
<i>The Latin War</i>	
23 The patriotism of P. Decius Mus	127
24 Valerius defeats a giant Gaul	133
25 Classical gods and goddesses	138

	<i>Page</i>
App. A2 Who was Publius Vergilius Maro?	147
App. A3 Who was Titus Livius?	148
App. A4 Who was Eutropius?	148
App. A5 Tarpeia's treachery	149
App. A6 Pandora's Box	151
App. A7 Extracts	151
App. A8 Extracts	152

Tests

1	38
2	67
3	92
4	122
5	145

Panels

Italia	Inside cover page front
Italiae pars media	Inside cover page back (left)
Graecia	Inside cover page back (right)

PREFACE

TO THE TEACHER

1. The Latin teacher cannot be replaced by any book or machine. The teacher's sympathetic attitude, encouragement and practical help is all important in the ultimate success of the pupil.
2. **Sections A — Drill:** Due attention to Sections A of each unit will ensure that pupils really know their grammar, declensions and conjugations, and will serve to speed up the thinking process.
3. **Sections B — Reading:** Continuous passages have been included from Unit I onwards, and these will prepare pupils for reading set works later on. Extracts from the original Latin have been included under *Appendix A*, as well as some additional passages for advanced pupils. Their themes — early Roman history and Greek legends — should enrich the pupil's background knowledge. Separate **Control Cards** are available for Sections B.
4. **Sections C — Pupil Activity:** A *linear programme* has been introduced with full references and instructions. These will enable pupils to control their own work and to find out the reason for mistakes, if any. On how to use see "*To the Pupil*" (2) below.
5. **Sections D — Translations:** These sections, viz. translations from English to Latin, have been programmed on separate **Control Cards** with full references and instructions as in Sections C. If used, the **Control Cards** will enable pupils to proceed according to ability, and the fast worker need not be retarded. The advantage of this system during brief periods of absence by the teacher (or the pupil) is evident: the work can proceed (or be "caught up") by means of **Control Cards**.

The *Control Card System* does not, however, relieve the teacher of all personal control work. It introduces a new type of control which will be most decidedly less tedious.

If **Control Cards** are not desired by the teacher, Sections B and D can be marked and controlled as the teacher desires.

6. **Sections E — Composition:** These require pupils to write their own Latin sentences on the given subject matter. They will promote understanding and comprehension.

In writing this course we had in mind the interests of both pupils and teachers. May your teaching of Latin be a joy.

TO THE PUPIL

1. Your attempts at Sections B and D of each unit can be checked by obtaining the **Control Cards** from your teacher after you have completed these sections or as much of them as required by your teacher. Use a different pen or pencil colour for corrections. **Control Cards "D"** will supply the reference necessary for you to find out why you have made mistakes, if any, and how to correct them.

2. **How to set about the programme in Sections C:** Disregarding the right hand column, place your ruler horizontally on the dividing line between frames 1 and 2 (in the left hand column) and write your answer to the left hand frame (1) in your note book in ink. Next, move your ruler down one frame and control your answer from the right hand frame (1). If your answer does not correspond with it, the figures below the words in each frame will direct you to the necessary rule and/or example so that you may remedy your error. Corrections should be done in a different pen or pencil colour. You will now be ready to proceed to the second frame. Your honesty will be richly rewarded in any test or examination.
3. Five tests have been included so that your progress may be evaluated. Go about them as indicated in "*To the Teacher*" *Sections D* above, and check your work by means of the **Control Card** concerned. These tests will determine which parts of the work will have to be revised again by you.

May your study of Latin be a joy.

THE WRITERS.

Johannesburg.

Ides of October a. MDCCCCLXVII

THE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN

(as conventionally accepted)

The Latin Alphabet

- The Latin alphabet contains the same letters as the English alphabet, but
- j* is not found as *j*, but as *i* (consonant), the tenth letter of the Latin alphabet, to be distinguished from the vowel *i*, which is the ninth letter.
 - k* is very rare. It was used in the oldest period of the language, but discontinued later, except in a few abbreviations, e.g. *Kal.*, *Calends*.
 - w* is not found in Latin, but the Latin *v* embraced the sound as we know it.
 - y* was introduced at a late period. It was borrowed from the Greek *upsilon* and previously expressed by *u*.
 - z* was introduced in Cicero's time to represent the Greek *zeta* (formerly expressed by *s*) and used in foreign words only.

Pronunciation of vowels

long	short
<i>ā</i> as in <i>father</i> , <i>pass</i>	<i>a</i> or <i>ă</i> as in <i>again</i> , <i>agenda</i>
<i>ē</i> as in <i>grey</i> , <i>fatal</i>	<i>e</i> or <i>ĕ</i> as in <i>net</i> , <i>men</i>
<i>ī</i> as in <i>machine</i> , <i>see</i>	<i>i</i> or <i>ĭ</i> as in <i>sip</i> , <i>knit</i>
<i>ō</i> as in <i>vote</i> , <i>hope</i>	<i>o</i> or <i>ŏ</i> as in <i>hop</i> , <i>cot</i>
<i>ū</i> as <i>oo</i> in <i>boot</i> or <i>u</i> in <i>brute</i>	<i>u</i> or <i>ŭ</i> as in <i>bull</i> , <i>foot</i>

Diphthongs

(double sounds)

- ae* as *ai* in *aisle* or *i* in *smile*
- au* as *ou* in *mouse* or *ow* in *howl*
- oe* as *oi* in *soil*, *toy*
- eu* as *e+u* or *e+oo* in *net+boot* (even *few* or *ewe*)
- ui* as in *we*, e.g. Latin *huic*, *cui*

Consonants

Pronounced as in English except:

- c* as in *cat*, *can*, e.g. *Caesar*
- g* as in *go*, *get*, e.g. *gradus*
- s* as in *sea*, *less*, e.g. *servus*
- t* as in *tap*, *top*, e.g. *terror*
- i* (=j) as in *yes*, *year*, e.g. *ius* and *Iuppiter*
- v* as in *well*, *will*, e.g. *servus* (for convenience more like the English *V* with perhaps just a suggestion of the *w* sound)
- tt*, double consonants like *-tt-*, *-ss-* are pronounced separately, e.g. *vac-ca*, *puel-la*, *mit-to*

Accents

In di-syllabic words the accent falls on the first syllable, e.g. *vólō*.
 If, in words of more than two syllables, the last syllable but one (second from the end) is long (—), this syllable is accented, e.g. *necávīt*, *erámus*; if short (v), the last syllable but two is accented, e.g. *návibus*, *cívium*, *régitis*.

UNIT 1

PRE-GRAMMAR READING

* Use your ready knowledge of Latin and read the following questions in English and answers in Latin:

1. <i>What is your name?</i>	1. Nōmen meum Philippus est.
2. <i>Where are you going, Philip?</i>	2. Ad Ītaliā.
3. <i>And from Italy?</i>	3. Ad Britanniam et Hispāniam.
4. <i>And from Spain?</i>	4. Ad Belgicam et Germāniam.
5. <i>Who is accompanying you?</i>	5. Doctor White.
6. <i>What is his vocation?</i>	6. Est medicus.
7. <i>What else are you taking along besides your luggage?</i>	7. L.s.d., id est librae et solidi et dēnarii.
8. <i>How much money more or less?</i>	8. Circā RCC, id est £C.
9. <i>About what part of this do you intend spending?</i>	9. Circā LXXX per centum.
10. <i>How will you make the journey?</i>	10. Per māchinam volantem iter faciam.



Philip leaves Jan Smuts airport in a S.A.A. Boeing 707

— Photo S.A.R. & H.

1A. With reference to the above write your answers to the following questions in English

MY FIRST LATIN LESSON

1. Who is going overseas?
2. Which overseas countries is he visiting?
3. Who accompanies him and what is his vocation?
4. How much money does Philip take along?
5. What percentage of this more or less does he intend spending?
6. What type of transport will he use to make the journey?

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 1(a), i.e. Card 1, and check your answers.

***** *Read*

IN THE LATIN CLASS

The pupils enter the Latin class. They are greeted by the teacher, and they, in turn, greet her. Some facts about the Romans are imparted. The pupils then leave the classroom after mutual greetings have been exchanged.

1. Salvēte, discipulī!	1. <i>Good morning, pupils!</i>
2. Salvē, magistra!	2. <i>Good morning, teacher!</i>
3. <i>Which language are you learning now?</i>	3. Nunc linguam Latīnam discimus.
4. <i>Whose language was it?</i>	4. Erat lingua Rōmānōrum.
5. <i>Where did the Romans live?</i>	5. Rōmānī Rōmae habitābant.
6. <i>Where is Rome?</i>	6. Rōma in Italiā est.
7. <i>Which river flows through Rome?</i>	7. Flūmen Tiberis per Rōmam fluit.
8. <i>Who will visit Rome?</i>	8. Philippus Romam visitābit.
9. Valēte, discipulī!	9. <i>Good-bye, pupils!</i>
10. Valē, magistra!	10. <i>Good-bye, teacher!</i>



The Colosseum and remains of the temple of Venus in Rome

"Foto ENIT ROMA"

- 1B. *With reference to the above read and interpret the following paragraph. Read the Latin first.*

ROME

Rōma nōn est in Britannīā. Rōma in Ītaliā est. Flūmen Tiberis per Rōmam fluit. Britannī Rōmae nōn habitābant. Rōmānī Rōmae habitābant. Petrus Rōmam nōn vīsītābit. Philippus Rōmam vīsītābit. Nunc linguam Latīnam discimus. Erat lingua Rōmānōrum.




- ** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 1(b)**, i.e. Card 2, and check your work.

UNIT 2




FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS: PRESENT TENSE

- * Read the following questions and answers in English and Latin with reference to the accompanying illustrations:

S I N G U L A R

	Do you (the pupil) sing?	<i>I sing</i>	1	Cantō
	Do I (the author) sing?	<i>You (sing.) sing</i>	2	Cantās
	Does she (the teacher) sing?	<i>She sings</i>	3	Cantat

P L U R A L

	Do you (the pupils) sing?	<i>We sing</i>	1	Cantāmus
	Do we (the authors) sing?	<i>You (pl.) sing</i>	2	Cantātis
	Do they (the teachers) sing?	<i>They sing</i>	3	Cantant

1 From the above it is evident that the stem (*cantā-*) of the verb remains unchanged (See rule 3) and that the **personal endings** or **inflexions** (*-ō, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt*) indicate the various **personal pronouns** (*I, you (sing.), he, she, it, we, you (pl.), they*). Thus the Present Tense (i.e. "Time") can be tabulated as follows:

FIRST CONJUGATION: A — VERBS

2 Indicative Mood

Present stem: **amā-**

Active

PRESENT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing.	1 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-ō</i>	amō	<i>I love; am loving; do love</i>
	2 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-s</i>	amās	<i>You (sing.) love; are loving, etc.</i>
	3 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-t</i>	amat	<i>He, she, it loves; is loving, etc.</i>
Pl.	1 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-mus</i>	amāmus	<i>We love; are loving; do love</i>
	2 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-tis</i>	amātis	<i>You (pl.) love; are loving, etc.</i>
	3 <i>amā-</i>	<i>-nt</i>	amant	<i>They love; are loving; do love</i>

3 **Amā + ō = amāō**, but due to contraction the *ā* is dropped in the first person singular.

4 A **verb** is the part of speech which tells us what **action** takes place, what is done to a thing, or in what state it exists, e.g. the first seven words of Vocabulary 2 are verbs. Its position in a Latin sentence is generally at the end.

Vocabulary 2

The ideal procedure is to be well acquainted with the vocabulary before attempting the reading and translations.

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum (1), *love, like*

laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum (1), *praise*

habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum (1), *live, dwell*

labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum (1), *work, work hard*

visitō, visitāre, visitāvī, visitātum (1), *visit*

cantō, cantāre, cantāvī, cantātum (1), *sing*

ambulō, ambulāre, ambulāvī, ambulātum (1), *walk*

Pretōria, -ae, f., Pretoria

Āfrica Meridiāna, South Africa

maximē (adv.), *very much,*

semper (adv.), *always*

most of all

nōn (adv.), *not*

numquam (nunquam), adv., *never*

nōnnumquam (nōnnumquam), adv., *sometimes*

et (conj.), *and*

2A. Drill

1. Give the present stem of each verb in **Vocabulary 2**. Can you deduce why they are called *A-verbs*?

2. The principal parts of *amō* are *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum*. Give the principal parts of *cantō* and *laudō*.

3. Give the Present indicative active of each verb in **Vocabulary 2**.

4. Translate orally

habitās

vīsītō

cantat

habitātis

vīsītāmus

cantant

you (pl.) sing

we walk

he praises

5. Read and act

Teacher: Peter, walk to the door, will you?

What are you doing, Peter?

Peter: *Ad iānuam ambulō.*

Teacher (walking to the door): What am I doing, class?

Class: *Ad iānuam ambulās.*

Teacher (while Peter walks to the door): What is Peter doing, class?

Class: *Petrus ad iānuam ambulat.*

Teacher: Mary walk to the door. What is Mary doing, class?

Class: *Maria ad iānuam ambulat.*

Teacher (sending Peter and Mary to the door): What are you doing, Peter and Mary?

Peter and Mary: *Ad iānuam ambulāmus.*

Teacher (walking to the door with Peter): What are we doing, class?

Class: *Ad iānuam ambulātis.*

Teacher (sending Peter and Mary to the door): What are they doing?

Class: *Ad iānuam ambulant.*

ad (prep. + acc.), to

iānua, -ae, f., door

6. The above can now be repeated using **In lūdō cantō, I sing in school** in place of *ad ianuam ambulo*.

in (prep. + abl.), in, on

lūdus, -ī, m., game, school

* Preparatory reading

A beautiful City

1. Where does Paul live?	1. Paulus Pretōriae habitat.
2. Where is Pretoria?	2. Pretōria in Āfricā Meridiānā est.
3. Is Pretoria beautiful?	3. Pretōria pulchra est.
4. Which city does Paul like very much?	4. Paulus Pretōriam maximē amat.
5. Where does Paul work?	5. Paulus Pretōriae labōrat.
6. Which countries does he sometimes visit?	6. Zambiam et Rhodēsiam et Nigēriam nōnnumquam vīstat.
7. Which country does he always praise?	7. Āfricam Meridiānam semper laudat.

5 The verb must agree in person with its subject. A personal name like *Paulus*, or any singular noun can take the place of a pronoun (*he, she, or it*) with the verb in the third person singular. In this case the subject of the sentence is expressed (**Paulus labōrat. Paul works.**) instead of being incorporated in the verb (**Labōrat. He works.**)



The Union Buildings, Pretoria

— Photo Pretoria Publicity Association

2B. Read and interpret intelligently

A BEAUTIFUL CITY

Paulus Pretōriae habitat et labōrat. Pretōriam maximē amat. Pretōria in Āfricā Meridiānā est. Pretōria pulchra est. Paulus Zambiam et Rhodēsiam et Nigēriam nōnnumquam visitat. Tanzaniam numquam visitat. Paulus Pretōriam semper laudat; Āfricam Meridiānam semper laudat.

- ** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 2B** (Card 3) and check your work.
- pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful** **est, he, she, it is (see sum)**

2C. Answer and/or translate. On how to proceed see Preface "To the Scholar," (2).

1. Which of the following English words are verbs? sing, send, chair, read, hill, write, dwell	
2. Which of the following Latin words are verbs? labōrō, cantō, semper, ambulō nōn, numquam	1. sing, send, read, write, dwell (4)
3 Are verbs conjugated or declined in Latin?	2. labōrō, cantō, ambulō (4 V2)
4. Which of the following words are personal pronouns? I, you, we, he, she, it, they	3. conjugated 2

5. What is the present stem of the verb in <i>labōrātis</i> ?	4. They are all personal pronouns. 1
6. With reference to <i>labōrātis</i> , (a) what is the <i>-tis</i> called? (b) what does <i>-tis</i> indicate? (c) translate <i>-tis</i> .	5. <i>labōrā-</i> 1 2
7. Is <i>Marcus</i> the (a) subject, or (b) object of the verb in the sentence <i>Marcus labōrat.</i>	6. (a) personal ending or inflexion 1 (b) personal pronoun 1 (c) you (pl.); Present Tense 2
<i>Translate</i> 8. You (sing.) walk.	7. subject (a) 5
9. He walks.	8. <i>Ambulās.</i> 2
10. <i>Marcus</i> walks.	9. <i>Ambulat.</i> 2
11. They walk.	10. <i>Marcus ambulat.</i> (2 5)
12. She walks.	11. <i>Ambulant.</i> 2
	12. <i>Ambulat.</i> 2

2D. *Translate into Latin (italicised words only)*

1. *I do not like* Pretoria.
2. *You (pl.) never visit* Belgium.
3. *They always praise* Italy.
4. *You (sing.) work hard.*
5. *Paul visits* Germany and Italy.
6. *She walks* to the door.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 2D (Card 4) and check your work.

UNIT 3

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS: THE NOMINATIVE CASE

* *Preparatory reading*

Lauretta and Veronica

1. <i>Where do Lauretta and Veronica live?</i>	1. Lauretta Vērōnicaque Londiniī habitant.
2. <i>Is Lauretta a boy or a girl?</i>	2. Lauretta est puella.
3. <i>Is London big?</i>	3. Londinium magnum est.
4. <i>Which city do Veronica and Lauretta like very much?</i>	4. Vērōnica et Lauretta Londinium valdē amant.
5. <i>Whom do they sometimes visit in Scotland?</i>	5. Monicam in Calēdoniā nōnnum quam vīsitant.
6. <i>Where do they never walk to?</i>	6. Ad silvam numquam ambulant.
7. <i>Whom does Veronica greet?</i>	7. Vērōnica agricolam salūtat.
8. <i>What do they often look at?</i>	8. Columbās saepe spectant.



The giant ramps of London's Tower Bridge spanning the Thames are raised to allow the passage of a yacht

— Photo United Kingdom Information Services

- 6 Nouns in the plural or two or more personal names connected by *et*, *aque* or *-que* are used as the subject of the sentence with the third person plural of the verb instead of the personal pronoun **they**. Can you find an example of this in the preparatory reading?
- 7 The **subject** of a sentence in Latin is written in the **Nominative** case, and it generally stands at the beginning of the sentence.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

8

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>mēnsa a table</i>	<i>mēnsae tables</i>
	mēnsa mēnsam mēnsae mēnsae mēnsā	mēnsae mēnsās mēnsārum mēnsīs mēnsīs

- 9 **Nouns** (the names of persons, things and qualities) are **declined** in Latin. Personal pronouns (see 1) are types of nouns. From the above pattern it is evident that Latin nouns have different inflexions (case endings), viz. - , -*am*, -*ae*, -*as*, -*arum*, -*is* in the first declension. Each of these has a different meaning or use, as we shall see.

Vocabulary 3

salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), <i>greet</i>	
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), <i>look at, watch</i>	
rēgina, -ae, f., <i>queen</i>	puella, -ae, f., <i>girl</i>
silva, -ae, f., <i>wood, forest</i>	villa, -ae, f., <i>farm-house</i>
columba, -ae, f., <i>dove</i>	agricola, -ae, m., <i>farmer</i>
valdē (adv.), <i>very, very much</i>	quoque (adv.), <i>also, (too)</i>
saepe (adv.), <i>often</i>	mēnsa, -ae, f., <i>table</i>
sed (conj.), <i>but</i>	-que (enclitic conj.), <i>and</i> (not with words ending in <i>c</i> and <i>short e</i>)

3A. Drill

- Decline the nouns in **Vocabulary 3** fully in the singular and plural by reading them to the pattern above.
- Conjugate *salūtō* and *spectō* in the Present indicative active.
- Give the principal parts of *salūtō* and *amō*.
- Translate orally

<i>puella salūtāt</i>	<i>agricolae spectant</i>	<i>rēgina ambulat</i>
<i>vīsītātis</i>	<i>puellae cantant</i>	<i>labōrās</i>
<i>they walk</i>	<i>the girls walk</i>	<i>the farmer walks</i>

- 10 Articles (*a*, *an*, *the*) are not found in Latin.



The Houses of Parliament and "Big Ben"

— Photo United Kingdom Information Services

3B. *Read and interpret intelligently*

LAURETTA AND VERONICA

Vērōnica Laurettaque Londinii habitant. Rēgīna Londinii quoque habitat. Vērōnica nōn est puer; puella est. Lauretta puella quoque est.

Londinium in Britannia est. Londinium magnum est. Flūmen Tamesis per Londinium fluit. Lauretta et Vērōnica Londinium valdē amant.

Puellae Monicam in Calēdoniā nōnnumquam visitant. Vērōnica et Lauretta ad silvam numquam ambulant, sed ad villam saepe ambulant. Lauretta agricolam salūtat. Vērōnica agricolam quoque salūtat. Agricola Laurettam Vērōnicamque salūtat.

Puellae columbās saepe spectant.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 3B (Card 5) and check your work

Reference vocabulary

Calēdonia, -ae, f., *Scotland*
 magnus, -a, um, *great, big*
 per (prep. + acc.), *through*
 Londinium, -ii, n., *London*

flumen, -inis, n., *a river*
 Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*
 fluō (3), *to flow*
 Tamesis, -is, m., *the Thames*

3C. *Answer and/or translate as prescribed in "To the Scholar," (2)*

1. Fill in: The verb has to agree in person with the — of the sentence	
2. Is <i>puellae</i> the (a) object, or (b) subject in <i>Puellae salūtat</i> ?	1. subject 5

3. Is the verb in Puellae salūtant in perfect agreement with its subject?	2. subject (b) 2 5
4. Which of the following words are nouns? villa, nōn, mēnsa, amō, et, silva, Marcus	3. Yes. <i>Salūtant</i> is third person pl. 2 6
5. Are nouns declined or conjugated?	4. villa, mēnsa, silva, Marcus (9 V3) 9
6. How are the articles <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> and <i>the</i> translated in Latin?	5. declined 9
7. In which case is the subject of a Latin sentence written?	6. The articles <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> and <i>the</i> are not found in Latin. 10
<i>Translate</i>	7. Nominative 7
8. You (sing.) greet.	8. Salūtās. 2
9. The farmer greets.	9. Agricola salūtat. 7 8 5 2
10. We visit.	10. Visitāmus. 2
11. They visit.	11. Visitant. 2
12. The girls visit.	12. Puellae visitant. 7 8 6 2

3D. *Translate into Latin (italicised words only, unless you have already mastered some other words from the reading)*

1. *Marcus and Paul often walk* to the wood.
2. *I never greet* the farmer.
3. *The doves do not sing*.
4. *You (pl.) sometimes praise* Veronica.
5. *The queen lives* in Britain.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 3D (Card 6) and check your work.

3E. Write two sentences of your own in Latin, using a noun as the subject and a verb to agree with it in number and person. Use a singular subject in the one sentence and a plural subject in the other.

UNIT 4

FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS: IMPERFECT TENSE

* *Preparatory reading*

A busy family

1. Who was working in the garden (when mother came home)?	1. Marcus et Antōnius in hortō <i>labōrābant.</i>
2. Who was singing (when mother came home)?	2. Vēra cantābat.
3. Who were watching television (when mother came home)?	3. Petrus et Paulus tēleorāmam <i>spectābant.</i>
4. Who was telling jokes (when mother came home)?	4. Dōra rīdicolās fābellās nārrābat.
5. Who was washing the car, while Paul was cleaning his bicycle?	5. Marius autoraedam lavābat, dum Paulus birotam pūrgābat.
6. Were the carrier pigeons flying away (when mother came home)?	6. Columbae internuntiae nōn <i>ēvolābant.</i>

The italicised words above are written in the Imperfect tense.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A-VERBS

11 Indicative Mood

Present stem: **amā-**

Active

I M P E R F E C T T E N S E				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bam</i>	amābam	<i>I was loving; I used to love (I loved)</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bās</i>	amābās	<i>You (sing.) were loving; used to love</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bat</i>	amābat	<i>He, she was loving; used to love</i>
Pl. 1	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bāmus</i>	amābāmus	<i>We were loving; used to love</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bātis</i>	amābātis	<i>You (pl.) were loving; used to love</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bant</i>	amābant	<i>They were loving; used to love</i>

Vocabulary 4

pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), fight
lavō, -āre, lāvi, lautum (1), wash
pūrgō, -āre, -āvi -ātum (1), clean
autoraeda, -ae, automobile, car

volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), fly
ēvolō (1), fly away
nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), tell,
relate, narrate

birota, -ae, bicycle
tēlorāma, -ae, television
columba internuntia, carrier pigeon
case, -ae, f., cottage
circum (prep.), around

fābula, -ae, f., story, tale
ridicula fābella, a joke
hortus, -i, m., garden
dum (conj.), while

(Words like *birota*, *teleorama* and *autoraeda* are modern innovations and can be found in the **Lexicon** which is kept up to date in the Vatican.)

4A. Drill

1. Conjugate *pugnō*, *nārrō* and *ēvolō* in the Present and Imperfect tenses.
2. Read *fābula* and *casa* fully in the sing. and pl. to the pattern in 8.
3. Give the principal parts of *nārrō* and *volō*.
4. Translate orally

pugnābātis

volant

I was fighting

nārrābāmus

ēvolābās

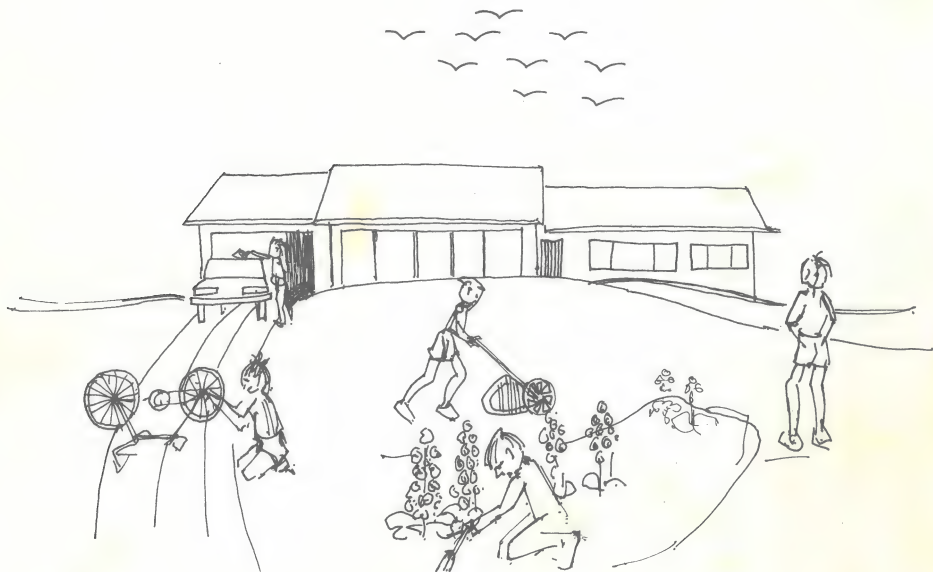
they were fighting

columba volābat

agricola nārrat

you (pl.) relate

4B. Read and answer the questions below



A BUSY FAMILY

When mother came home,

Petrus et Antōnius in hortō labōrābant; nōn pugnābant.
Dōra cantābat, sed Sylvia et Henricus tēlorāmam spectābant.
Paulus autoraedam lavābat, dum Marcus birotam pūrgābat.
Vēra Stellaque nōn cantābant; fābulās et ridiculās fābellās narrābant.
Columbae internuntiae circum casam volābant; nōn ēvolābant.
Marius columbās internuntiās spectābat.

* Determine from the above what the following children were doing when mother came home and give your answers in English:

- | | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. Marcus | 2. Dora | 3. Vera and Stella |
| 4. Marius | 5. Peter and Anthony | 6. Paul |
| 7. Sylvia and Henry | | |

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 4B (Card 7) and check your answers.

4C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which tense of the verb is used in <i>Dōra nārrābat</i> ?	
2. Which case is <i>Dōra</i> in <i>Dōra nārrābat</i> ?	1. Imperfect 11
3. Why is <i>Dōra</i> Nominative in <i>Dōra nārrābat</i> ?	2. Nominative 7
4. Which of the following Latin words are verbs? pugnō, dum, fābula, nārrō, volō, birota, nōn, semper	3. <i>Dōra</i> is the subject of the sentence. 7
5. Which of the words in frame 4 are nouns?	4. pugnō, nārrō, volō (4 V4)
<i>Translate</i> 6. I was relating.	5. fābula, birota (9 8)
7. You (pl.) were not fighting.	6. Nārrābam. V4 11
8. She was singing.	7. Nōn pugnābātis. V2 11
9. Paul was singing.	8. Cantābat. 11
10. We were walking.	9. Paulus cantābat. 7 5 11
11. They fight.	10. Ambulābāmus. 11
12. The farmers were fighting.	11. Pugnānt. 2
	12. Agricolaē pugnābant. 7 8 6 11

4D. *Translate into Latin (words in brackets, only if you think you can)*

1. The girls were not fighting.
2. You (pl.) were working (in the garden).
3. We are telling (stories).
4. Peter and Marius were not praising (Monica).
5. The doves were not flying away.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 4D** (Card 8) and check your work.

4E. Write your own Latin sentence using an Imperfect tense.

UNIT 5

FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS: THE VOCATIVE CASE

Vocabulary 5

<i>videō, I see</i>	<i>portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), carry</i>
<i>saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), dance</i>	<i>vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), call</i>
<i>nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), sail</i>	<i>discipulī, pupils, scholars</i>
<i>magister, teacher (m.)</i>	<i>nauta, -ae m., sailor</i>
<i>magistra, -ae, f., teacher (fem.)</i>	<i>hasta, -ae, f., spear</i>
<i>terra, -ae, f., land country,</i>	<i>sagitta, -ae, f., arrow</i>
<i>earth</i>	<i>herī (adv.), yesterday</i>
<i>salvē, greetings to you (sing.)</i>	<i>valē, good-bye, farewell to you (s.)</i>
<i>salvēte, greetings to you (pl.)</i>	<i>valēte, good-bye, farewell to you (pl.)</i>

* Preparatory reading

IN THE CLASSROOM

Magistra:	<i>Salvēte, discipulī!</i>
Discipuli:	<i>Salvē, magistra!</i>
Magistra:	What do you see in the picture, Peter?
Petrus:	<i>Nautam videō, ō magistra.</i>
Magistra:	Peter, tell the girls if you like a sailor.
Petrus:	<i>Nautam amō, ō puellae.</i>

12 The **Vocative** case is used when **addressing persons or things**. The italicised words above are **vocatives**.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

13

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	<i>mēnsa a table</i>	<i>mēnsae tables</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	<i>mēnsa ō table</i>	<i>mēnsae ō tables</i>
	mēnsam mēnsae mēnsae mēnsā	mēnsās mēnsārum mēnsīs mēnsīs

14

- (a) **Adverbs** (like *herī, numquam* and *semper*) are **not declined**. Note how an adverb modifies or qualifies
- (i) a *verb*: The boy runs *fast*.
 - (ii) an *adjective*: The boy is *very* big.
 - (iii) another *adverb*: The boy runs *very* fast.
- (b) **Position**: generally before the word it qualifies, but adverbs of time like **ōlim**, *once, once upon a time* and **nunc**, *now* may be first in the sentence.

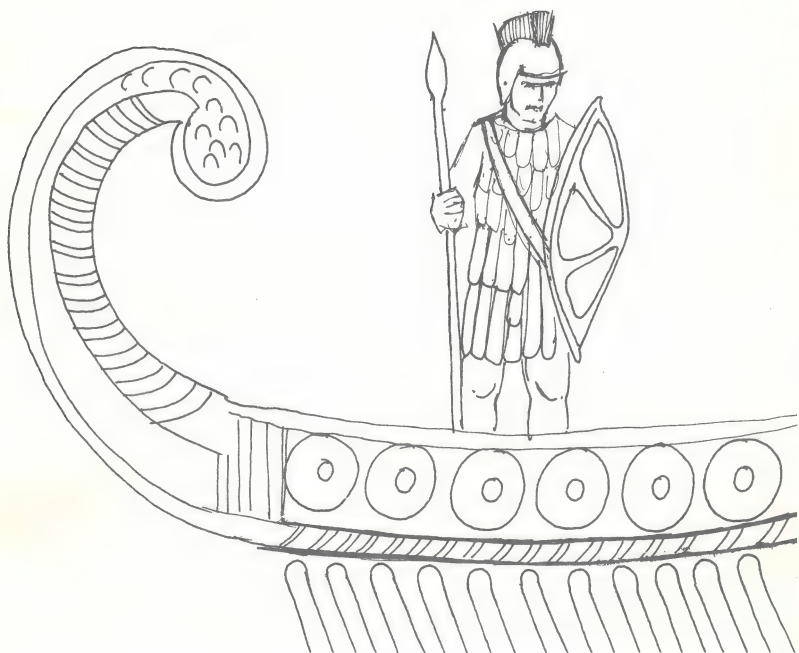
5A. Drill

1. Conjugate *portō*, *saltō*, *vocō* and *nāvigō* in the Present and Imperfect indicative active.
2. Read the declension of *nauta*, *hasta* and *terra* to the pattern above.
3. Give the principal parts of *vocō* and *nāvigō*.
4. Translate orally

valēte, O magistrae!
portābātis
greetings, sailors!

valē, O agricola!
vocāmus
good-bye, Veronica!

5B. Read



THE SAILOR

1. *Magistra:* Salvēte, discipuli!
2. *Discipuli:* Salvē, Ō magistra!
Magistra: Tell the girls if the sailor is dancing, Marius.
3. *Marius:* Nauta nōn saltat, Ō puellae!
Magistra: Is he calling, Marius?
4. *Marius:* Nōn vocat, Ō magistra!
Magistra: Henry, tell Monica what the sailor is looking at.
5. *Henricus:* Nauta terram spectat, Ō Monica!
Magistra: What was the sailor doing yesterday, class?
6. *Discipuli:* Herī nauta nāvigābat, Ō magistra.
Magistra: Where was he sailing to, class?

7. *Discipulī*: Ad Britanniam nāvigābat, ~~O~~ magistra.

Magistra: Does the sailor like Britain very much, Marius?

8. *Marius*: Nauta Britanniam maximē amat, ~~O~~ magistra.

9. *Magistra*: Valēte, discipulī!

10. *Discipulī*: Valē, magistra!

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 5B (Card 9) and check your work.

5C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which case is used in addressing a person or thing in Latin?	
2. State the derivation of the word <i>Vocative</i> .	1. Vocative 12
3. Can you spot the adverbs among the following words? portō, fābula, navigō, herī, discipulī, vocō, numquam	2. From voco , to call V5
4. State the case of <i>puellae</i> in <i>Valēte</i> , <i>O puellae</i> .	3. herī, numquam 14 V5 14 V2
<i>Translate</i> 5. The sailors were sailing.	4. Vocative 12 13
6. Greetings, girls!	5. Nautae nāvigābant. 7 8 6 11
7. Greetings, sailor!	6. Salvēte, Ō puellae! V5 12 13
8. We are carrying, O queen.	7. Salvē, Ō nauta! V5 13 12
9. Good-bye, farmers!	8. Portāmus, Ō regīna. V5 2 12 13
10. Good-bye, Mary and Stella!	9. Valēte, Ō agricolae! V5 12 13
	10. Valēte, Ō Maria et Stella! V5 (12 13)

5D. *Translate into Latin*

1. Good morning, sailors!
2. Good-bye, farmer! I am sailing.
3. Girls do not carry (spears), O Lauretta.
4. Peter and Paul were sailing (to Britain).
5. Yesterday we were working (in the garden).
6. They often used to fight.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 5D** (Card 10) and check your work.

5E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a vocative.

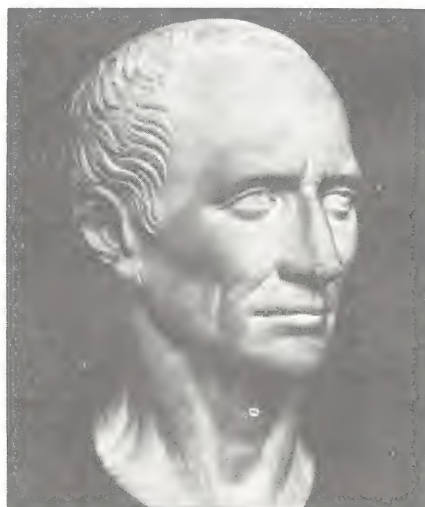
UNIT 6

FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS AND FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE AND ACCUSATIVE CASE

* *Preparatory reading*

Caesar will invade Britain

Because the Britons had assisted the Gauls in their struggle against the Romans, Caesar decided in 55 B.C. to invade Britain. He collected a large number of ships on the French coast and transported his men across the channel.



*Julius Caesar,
British Museum, London*

1. Who will call his soldiers and sailors together?	1. Caesar militēs et nautās convocābit.
2. What will the soldiers carry?	2. Militēs hastās portābunt.
3. Whom will they attack?	3. Incolās oppugnābunt.
4. Where will he drive the inhabitants to?	4. Incolās in silvās fugābit.
5. Whom will Caesar praise?	5. Caesar nautās laudābit.
6. Where will he hasten to then?	6. Deinde Rōmam festinābit.

The tense used in the sentences above is called the **Future Simple**.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A-VERBS

15

Indicative Mood

Present stem: **amā-**

Active

FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bō</i>	amābō	<i>I shall love; shall be loving</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bis</i>	amābis	<i>You (s.) will love; will be loving</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bit</i>	amābit	<i>He, she will love; will be loving</i>
Pl 1	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bimus</i>	amābimus	<i>We shall love; shall be loving</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bitis</i>	amābitis	<i>You (pl.) will love; will be loving</i>
	<i>amā-</i>	<i>-bunt</i>	amābunt	<i>They will love; will be loving</i>

Vocabulary 6

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), call together

armō, āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), to arm, equip

oppugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), attack

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), drive away, put to flight, rout

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), ravage, plunder, devastate, lay waste

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), overcome, conquer, defeat

festinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1), hasten

Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar

insula, -ae, f., island

incola, -ae, c., inhabitant

deinde (adv.), then, next

N.B. c. = communis generis, m. or f.

militēs, soldiers

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome

fortiter (adv.), bravely

ad (prep. + acc.), to, towards, near

in (prep. + acc.), into, towards

6A. Drill

1. Conjugate *armō*, *vāstō*, *superō*, *festinō*, *portō* and *volō* in the Present, Imperfect and Future Simple tenses.
2. Give the principal parts of *pugnō* and *vāstō*.
3. Translate orally

armābis

pugnābit

we will arm

fugābimus

spectas

you (pl.) carry

nāvigābātis

labōrābunt

they will attack



Bronze head of Emperor Hadrian dredged from the Thames near London Bridge, British Museum, London

6B. Read in the Future Simple

CAESAR WILL CONQUER BRITAIN

Caesar nautās et militēs convocābit et armābit. Militēs et nautae hastās sagittāsque portābunt. Ad Britanniam nāvigābunt.

Insulam et incolās oppugnābunt. Nautae et militēs fortiter pugnābunt. Incolās in silvās fugābunt.

Caesar terram vāstābit et incolās superābit. Caesar nautās et militēs laudābit. Deinde Caesar Rōmam festinābit.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 6B** (Card 11) and check your work.

16 The heading of a Latin passage is of importance and should always be borne in mind in the reading or translation.

Having translated or read many nouns forming the object of a sentence, pupils can now determine the object rule, viz.

17 The **object** of a transitive verb is written in the **accusative** case. A transitive verb is one which can take an object like *portō* below.

18 Analysis of a simple sentence

Subject (<i>noun</i>)	Predicate (<i>verb</i>)	Object (<i>noun</i>)
Nauta (Nom.)	portat	hastam.
The sailor	carries	a spear.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

19

Case	Singular	Plural
Nominative Vocative	mēnsa <i>a table</i> mēnsa <i>o table</i>	mēnsae <i>tables</i> mēnsae <i>o tables</i>
Accusative	mēnsam <i>a table</i>	mēnsās <i>tables</i>
	mēnsae mēnsae mēnsā	mēnsārum mēnsis mēnsis

20 A **preposition** indicates the relation of one noun to another, e.g.
The girl walks *to* the garden. The book lies *on* the table.

21 The **Accusative** case is used with a number of prepositions in Latin, e.g.
ad (to) and **in** into (indicating motion); **post** (after), **contrā** (against),
extrā (outside), **apud** (among, at the house of), **per** (through)
ad Galliam, *to Gaul*; **in** silvās, *into the woods*

22 Before the names of towns, cities and small islands the preposition **ad** mentioned above is omitted, e.g.

Agricola Rōmam ambulat. *The farmer walks to Rome.*

Marcus Londinium festinat. *Marcus hastens to London.*

* Read *insula* and *incola* to the pattern above and translate orally:

ad incolās

in silvam

Pretōriam

ad Italiam

in Italiam

ad casam

6C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which word is the object in <i>Nauta insulam oppugnābit</i> ?	
2. Is <i>insulam</i> in frame 1 (a) a transitive verb (b) an adverb (c) a noun?	1. <i>insulam</i> 17 - 19
3. Which word is the predicate of the sentence in frame (1) and in which tense is it written?	2. <i>noun</i> (c) 9 18
4. Is the predicate of the sentence in frame (1) (a) a noun (b) an intransitive verb (c) a transitive verb (d) a preposition?	3. <i>oppugnābit</i> ; Future Simple 4 18 15
5. State the case of <i>Italiam</i> in the sentence <i>Ad Italiam ambulat</i> .	4. <i>transitive verb</i> (c) 18 17
6. Why is <i>Italiam</i> accusative in the sentence in frame (5)?	5. <i>Accusative</i> 21 19
7. Which of the following words are prepositions? <i>nōn, et, in, herī, ad, -que</i>	6. It follows the preposition <i>ad</i> which takes an accusative. 20 21 19
<i>Translate</i>	
8. The farmers will hasten to Rome.	7. <i>in, ad</i> (20 21)
9. We shall drive the sailors into the woods.	8. <i>Agricolae Rōmam festinābunt.</i> 7 8 22 19 6 15
10. Yesterday the girls were carrying spears and arrows.	9. <i>Nautās in silvās fugābimus.</i> 17 19 20 19 21 15
11. The doves will fly to Italy.	10. <i>Herī puellae hastās sagittāsque</i> 14b 7 8 (17 18 19) <i>portābant.</i> 6 11
12. The farmer greets the girls.	11. <i>Columbae ad Italiam volābunt.</i> 7 8 21 19 21 6 15
	12. <i>Agricola puellās salūtat.</i> 7 8 17 19 5 2

6D. *Translate into Latin*

1. She will not praise the farmers and the sailors.
2. We shall hasten to Rome.
3. The sailors were ravaging the country and attacking the inhabitants.
4. You (pl.) will sail to the island and drive away the inhabitants into the woods.
5. The inhabitants do not carry spears and arrows.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 6D** (Card 12) and check your work.

6E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a subject (noun), object (noun) and predicate (verb). Select a Future Simple tense.

TEST 1

1. From the list <i>insula, ad, ambulō, et, maximē, amō, terra, vocō, sed</i> and <i>silva</i> select (a) the verbs (b) the nouns (c) the prepositions (d) the conjunctions.
2. Are verbs conjugated or declined?
3. Give the present stem of (a) <i>vocō</i> (b) <i>portō</i>
4. In the sentence <i>Nautae hastās portābant</i> , state (a) the subject and case (b) the object and case (c) predicate and tense.
5. Which case is used in addressing a person or thing in Latin?
6. State and explain the case of <i>villam</i> in the sentence <i>Ad villam ambulās</i> .
7. Which part of speech is the predicate of a sentence? (a) noun (b) adverb (c) verb (d) conjunction.
<i>Translate</i>
8. I attack.
9. You (sing.) were attacking.
10. He will attack.
11. The sailor attacks.
12. The sailors were attacking the island.
13. We hasten to Italy.
14. You (pl.) will hasten to Rome.

15. Good-bye, sailors! We are walking into the woods.
16. Veronica and Mary will greet the farmers.
17. The girls are hastening to the farm-house.
18. The inhabitants fight bravely.
19. The farmer often tells stories.
20. The girls were not praising the sailors and the farmers.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Test 1** (Card 13) and check your work.
Read Preface "*To the Scholar*," (3).

UNIT 7

FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS AND FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS THE PERFECT AND THE GENITIVE

Let us "invade" Britain for a second time (as in fact the Romans did,) now using the Perfect tense and the conjunctions **ubi**, *when*, **postquam**, *after*, and **simulac** (**simulatque**), *as soon as*.

23 Conjunctions are joining words, used to connect sentences

- (a) co-ordinately, e.g. **et** (*and*), **sed** (*but*)
- (b) subordinately, e.g. **dum** (*while*), **postquam** (*after*).

* *Preparatory reading*

Caesar in Britain

1. Caesar <i>postquam</i> <i>nautās armāvit</i> , <i>ad Britanniam nāvīgāvit</i> .	1. After he had equipped (his) sailors, Caesar sailed to Britain.
2. Caesar <i>ubi incolās superāvit</i> , <i>insulam occupāvit</i> .	2. When he had conquered the in- habitants, Caesar seized the island.
3. Caesar <i>simulac insulam occupāvit</i> , <i>ad Galliam nāvīgāvit</i> .	3. As soon as Caesar had seized the island, he sailed to Gaul.

The italicised verbs above are in the **Perfect** tense.

FIRST CONJUGATION: A-VERBS

24 Indicative Mood

Perfect Stem: **amāv-**

Active

P E R F E C T T E N S E					
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English Perfect	Eng. Aorist
Sing. 1	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-ī</i>	amāvī	<i>I have loved</i> <i>I have been loving</i>	<i>I loved</i> <i>I did love</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-istī</i>	amāvistī	<i>You (s.) have loved, etc.</i>	<i>You (s.) loved, etc.</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-it</i>	amāvit	<i>He, she has loved, etc.</i>	<i>He, she loved, etc.</i>
Pl. 1	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-imus</i>	amāvimus	<i>We have loved, etc.</i>	<i>We loved, etc.</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-istis</i>	amāvistis	<i>You (pl.) have loved, etc.</i>	<i>You (pl.) loved, etc.</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-ērunt</i>	amāvērunt or amāvēre	<i>They have loved, etc.</i>	<i>They loved, etc.</i>

Note the change of stem.

Vocabulary 7

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvi, -iūtum (1), help, assist

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), pacify, make peaceful

occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), seize, hold, lay hold of (territory)

atque (conj.), and

ubi (conj.), when

postquam (conj.), after

simulac (simulatque), conj., as soon as

Britanni, the Britons

Italia, -ae, f., Italy

Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul

7A. Drill

1. Conjugate *adiuvō, pācō, occupō* and *visitō* in the Present, Imperfect, Future Simple and Perfect indicative active tenses.
2. Conjugate in the Perfect: *ambulō, spectō, pugnō* and *portō*.
3. Give the principal parts of *pācō, volō* and *adiuvō*.
4. Read to the pattern in 19: *Gallia, Italia* (singular only).
5. Translate orally

pācāvisti

adiūvit

we attacked

laudāvimus

spectāvistis

he has called

nārrāvērunt

nāvigāvit

you (pl.) ravaged



The Roman baths at Aquae Sulis (Bath)

— Photo United Kingdom Information Services

7B. (1) Read

CAESAR IN BRITAIN

Britanni Galliam adiūvērunt. Caesar nautās atque militēs convocāvit. Caesar postquam nautās et militēs armāvit, ad Britanniam nāvigāvit.

Caesar incolās oppugnāvit. Caesar et militēs et nautae fortiter pugnāvērunt. Incolae quoque fortiter pugnāvērunt. Caesar incolās in silvās fugāvit.

Caesar simulatque incolās superāvit, terram vāstāvit. Postquam terram vāstāvērunt, Rōmānī insulam pācāvērunt. Caesar ubi insulam occupāvit, nautās et militēs laudāvit.

Deinde Caesar ad Italiam festināvit.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 7B(1)** (Card 14) and check your work.

25 From the above follows the rule that *ubi*, *postquam* and *simulac* are used with the Perfect indicative with relation to the past.

26 The **genitive** case is used in Latin to indicate **possession**. Note the position of the genitive before the noun it qualifies in the following sentences:

1. Who attacked the inhabitants of Italy?	1. Marcus Italiae incolās oppugnāvit.
2. Which city's sailors fought bravely?	2. Rōmae nautae fortiter pugnāvērunt.
3. To whose cottage did we walk?	3. Ad agricolae casam ambulāvimus.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

27

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa a table	mēnsae tables
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa O table	mēnsae O tables
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam table	mēnsās tables
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae of a table a table's	mēnsārum of tables tables'
	mēnsae mēnsā	mēnsis mēnsis

7B. (2) Read

CAESAR IN BRITAIN

Caesar Britanniae incolās oppugnāvit. Nautārum hastās sagittāsque spectāvimus. Rōmae nautae fortiter pugnāvērunt. Insulae incolae quoque fortiter pugnāvērunt. Caesar insulae incolās superāvit. Deinde ad Italiae incolās festināvit.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 7B(2)** (Card 15) and check your work.

7C. Answer and/or translate

<p>1. Select the</p> <p>(a) subject</p> <p>(b) object</p> <p>(c) predicate</p> <p>in <i>Nautae Galliam oppugnāvērunt.</i></p>	
---	--

2. State the tense of <i>oppugnāvērunt</i> in frame (1)	1. (a) Subject: nautae 7 8 (b) Object: Galliam 17 18 19 (c) Predicate: oppugnāvērunt 18
3. (a) Select the conjunctions among the following words: pācō, et, in, ad, sed, nōn, postquam	2. Perfect indicative 24
(b) Which conjunction in (a) joins sentences subordinately?	3. (a) et sed, postquam V2 V3 V7 23
4. State the case of <i>nautae</i> in <i>Ad nautae casam festināvērunt</i> .	3. (b) postquam 23b
5. What does the genitive denote? (a) Attraction (b) Possession (c) Distance from	4. Genitive 26 27
6. How many sailors are referred to in <i>the sailors' spears</i> : (a) one sailor, or (b) more than one sailor?	5. Possession (b) 26
7. With which tense of the indicative are <i>ubi</i> , <i>postquam</i> and <i>simulac</i> used when they refer to past time?	6. More than one sailor 27
<i>Translate</i> 8. We seized Gaul.	7. Perfect 25
9. He hastens to Pretoria.	8. Galliam occupāvimus. 17 19 24
10. You (pl.) will hasten to Italy.	9. Pretōriam festinat. 22 19 2
11. I was hastening to the sailors' cottages.	10. Ad Ītaliā festinābitis. 21 19 21 15
12. They hastened to the inhabitants of Gaul.	11. Ad nautārum casās festinābam. 21 26 27 19 21 11
	12. Ad Galliae incolās festināvērunt. 21 26 27 19 21 24

7D. *Translate into Latin*

1. Caesar hastened to Rome after he had conquered the inhabitants of Gaul.
2. As soon as he had called the farmers together, Marcus attacked the island of the sailors.
3. When we hastened to the inhabitants of Italy, we did not carry spears and arrows.
4. The sailors of Rome fought bravely; the inhabitants of Britain did not pacify Gaul.
5. Marcus will assist the sailors of Rome.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card of Unit 7D** (Card 16) and check your work.

- 7E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a genitive and a verb in the Perfect indicative active.

UNIT 8

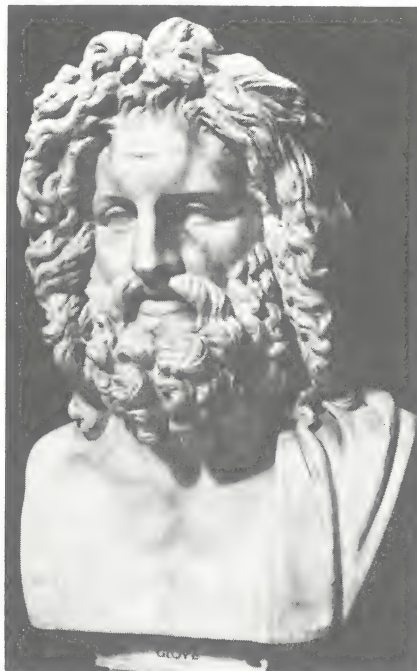
FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS AND FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS THE PLUPERFECT TENSE AND THE DATIVE CASE

* *Preparatory reading*

Farmers are changed into Frogs

1. Who was a beautiful goddess?	1. <i>Lātōna erat dea pulchra.</i>
2. Why did Jupiter blame Hera?	2. <i>Iuppiter Heram culpāvit, quod (Hera) Lātōnam ad terram fugāverat.</i>
3. What did the farmers do when Latona approached the water?	3. <i>Ubi Lātōna ad aquam appropinquāvit, agricolae (Lātōnam) fugāvērunt.</i>
4. Why did Jupiter give Diana to Latona?	4. <i>Iuppiter Lātōnae Diānam dedit, quod Lātōna filiā dēsiderāverat.</i>

The italicised verbs above are in the Pluperfect.



Jupiter, Vatican Museum, Rome

— "Foto Alinari"

FIRST CONJUGATION: A-VERBS

28 Indicative Mood

Perfect stem: **amāv-**

Active

PLUPERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-eram</i>	amāveram	<i>I had loved, I had been loving</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erās</i>	amāverās	<i>You (s.) had loved; had been loving</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erat</i>	amāverat	<i>He, she had loved; had been loving</i>
Pl. 1	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>	amāverāmus	<i>We had loved; we had been loving</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erātis</i>	amāverātis	<i>You (pl.) had loved; had been loving</i>
	<i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erant</i>	amāverant	<i>They had loved; had been loving</i>

29 (a) Note the use of **quod**, *because* (subordinate conj.) with the Pluperfect as in frames (2) and (4) above. Pluperfect means more than complete and denotes an action in the past which takes place before another in the Perfect or Imperfect.

(b) *Quod* can also be used with the Present, Imperfect, etc., depending on the time expressed.

30 The verb **dō** takes a direct object in the acc. and an indirect object in the **dative** (called *dative of the indirect object*) as *Latonae* in frame (4) above.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa <i>a table</i>	mēnsae <i>tables</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa <i>O table</i>	mēnsae <i>O tables</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam <i>table</i>	mēnsās <i>tables</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae <i>of a table, a table's</i>	mēnsārum <i>of tables, tables'</i>
31 <i>Dative</i>	mēnsae <i>to, for a table</i>	mēnsis <i>to, for tables</i>
	mēnsā	mēnsis

Vocabulary 8

culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *blame, accuse, reprimand, reprove*

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *wander, roam, stray; be mistaken, err*

dō, dare, dedi, datum (1), with direct and indirect object, *give*

dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *long for, wish for*

mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) in + acc., *change into*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + dat. or ad + acc., *approach*

quod (conj.), *because*

dea, -ae, f., *goddess* (dat. and abl. pl. -ābus)

aqua, -ae, f., *water*

rāna, -ae, f., *frog*

filia, -ae, f., *daughter* (dat. and abl. pl. -ābus)

itaque (conj. and adv.), *therefore, and so*

tandem (adv.), *at length, at last, finally*

autem (conj.), second word, *but, however*

diū (adv.), *for a long time, long*

8A. Drill

1. Conjugate five indicative active tenses of *culpō*, *occupō*, *dō*, *oppugnō*, *nāvigō*, *volō*, *salūtō* and *laudō*.
2. Read in the singular and plural to the pattern in 31: *insula*, *rāna*, *agricola* and *nauta*.
3. Give the principal parts of *culpō* and *dō*.
4. Translate orally

adiūverant

dedit

appropinquāvisti

occupāverātis

dederant

portāverāmus

he had blamed

I gave

you (pl.) had fought

8B. Read and see the reference vocabulary below for italicised words

LATONA IS BLESSED WITH A DAUGHTER

Farmers are changed into Frogs

Lātōna dea pulchra erat. In *Olympō* habitābat. *Hera* *Lātōnam* nōn amāvit. Itaque *Hera* *Lātōnam* ad terram fugāvit.

Iuppiter *Hera* culpāvit quod (*Hera*) *Lātōnam* ad terram fugāverat. *Lātōna* diū errāvit. Tandem aquam dēsiderāvit. *Agricolae* autem *Lātōnae* aquam non dedērunt. Ubi *Lātōna* aquae appropinquāvit, *agricolae* *Lātōnam* fugāverunt.

Iuppiter *agricolās* in *rānās* mūtāvit, quod (*agricolae*) *Lātōnae* aquam nōn dederant.

Quod *Lātōna* filiam dēsiderāverat, *Iuppiter* *Lātōnae* *Diānam* dedit. *Lātōna* *Diānam* maximē amāvit.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 8B (Card 17) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Lātōna, -ae, f., *Latona*, mother of *Apollo* and *Diana*

Hera, -ae, f., *Hera*, queen of the gods in *Greece* (*Juno* in *Rome*)

Iuppiter, *Iovis*, m., father of the gods in *Rome* (*Zeus* in *Greece*)

Olympus, -i, m., *Mount Olympus*, abode of the gods in *Thessaly*



Diana and the Stag, *Louvre*

— Photo “Musée du Louvre”

8C. Answer and/or translate

1. Give the present and perfect stems of <i>culpō</i> and <i>dō</i>	
2. Translate <i>farmer</i> in the sentence <i>The girl helped the farmer.</i>	1. culpā-, culpāv- dā-, ded- 2 24 2 24
3. (a) Is <i>he</i> a verb, adverb, personal pronoun or a preposition? (b) Give the personal ending (inflexion) for <i>he</i> in the Pluperfect indicative active	2. agricolam 17 18 19
4. (a) State the case of <i>puellis</i> in <i>Marcus puellis aquam dederat.</i> (b) Motivate (State why).	3. (a) personal pronoun 1 (b) -erat 28
5. (a) Is quod (<i>because</i>) a noun, verb, conjunction or adverb? (b) Is quod used co-ordinately or subordinately?	4. (a) Dative 31 30 (b) Dative of the indirect object with <i>dō</i> 30
6. (a) Is <i>superō</i> a transitive or intransitive verb? (b) Motivate your answer.	5. (a) conjunction V8 23 (b) subordinately 29
<i>Translate</i>	
7. The girls had given the sailor water.	6. (a) Transitive verb 17 V6 (b) <i>Superō</i> can take a direct object 17
8. They had approached the cottage.	7. Puellae nautae aquam 7 8 30 31 17.- 19 dederant. 6 28
9. The farmer's daughter was approaching Rome.	8. Casae (ad casam) appropin- 31 19 - 21 V8 quāverant. 28
10. We had wandered for a long time.	9. Agricolaе filia Rōmān (Rōmae) 26 27 7 8 22 19 31 appropinquābat. V8 11
	10. Diū errāverāmus. 14 28 V8

8D. *Translate into Latin*

1. Caesar attacked the sailors, because they had assisted the inhabitants of the island.
2. After Caesar had given the sailors spears and arrows, he sailed to Britain.
3. I shall give Latona water, because I like her (Latona) very much.
4. We had conquered the inhabitants of Gaul.
5. Latona's daughter gave the goddess an arrow.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 8D** (Card 18) and check your work.

8E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a dative and a verb in the Pluperfect indicative active.

UNIT 9

FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS AND FIRST DECLENSION NOUNS THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE AND THE ABLATIVE CASE

* *Preparatory reading*

The Pirates are punished

1. Ōlim <i>pirātae</i> Iūlium <i>prehendērunt</i> .	1. Pirates once seized Julius.
2. Iūlius <i>irātus</i> <i>erat</i> .	2. Julius was angry.
3. Ubi <i>Iūlium</i> <i>liberāverimus</i> , Iūlius <i>Rōmam</i> <i>nāvigābit</i> .	3. When we (shall) have set him free, Julius will sail to Rome.
4. Pirātae <i>simulac</i> <i>pecūniam</i> <i>accēpērunt</i> , Iūlium <i>liberāvērunt</i> .	4. As soon as the pirates had received the money, they set Julius free.
5. Sī <i>pirātas</i> <i>prehenderit</i> , Iūlius <i>pirātas</i> <i>necābit</i> .	5. If he seizes (will have seized) the pirates, Julius will kill them.

32 The italicised words above are in the **Future Perfect**. This tense is a completed future tense and denotes an action in the future taking place before that of the main sentence.

33 FIRST CONJUGATION: A-VERBS

Indicative Mood

Perfect stem: **amāv-**

Active

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing.	1 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erō</i>	amāverō	<i>I shall have loved; shall have been loving</i>
	2 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-eris</i>	amāveris	<i>You (s.) will have loved; will have been loving</i>
	3 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erit</i>	amāverit	<i>He, she will have loved; will have been loving</i>
Pl.	1 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erimus</i>	amāverimus	<i>We shall have loved; shall have been loving</i>
	2 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-eritis</i>	amāveritis	<i>You (pl.) will have loved; will have been loving</i>
	3 <i>amāv-</i>	<i>-erint</i>	amāverint	<i>They will have loved; will have been loving</i>

This completes the first conjugation indicative active mood. (There are three more conjugations and three more moods to be studied).

34 *Ubi, postquam* and *simulac*, as well as *sī*, are used with the Future Perfect (and the Future Simple). See frames (3), (4) and (5) above.

Vocabulary 9

necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *kill*

liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *set free, liberate*

prehendērunt, *they seized*; *prehenderit*, *he will have seized*; from *prehendō* (3), *seize, grasp, catch, lay hold of (people)*

accēpērunt, third person pl. Perfect tense ind. active of *accipiō*, *to receive*

nam (conj.), position first, *for*

erat, *he was* (see *sum*)

inquit, *he, she says*; *he, she said* (to follow first or second direct word)

in (prep. + abl.), *in, on*

pirāta, -ae, m., *pirate*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money*

sī (conj.), *if*

ōlim (adv.), *once, once upon a time, formerly*

irātus, -a, -um, *angry*

9A. Drill

1. Conjugate *necō*, *liberō*, *volō*, *dō*, *adiuvō*, *armō* and *portō* in six tenses of the indicative active.
2. Decline fully in the sing.: *aqua*, *pecūnia*; in the plural: *pirāta*, *casa*.
3. Give the principal parts of *necō*, and *liberō*.
4. Translate orally

necāveritis

dederit

appropinquat

we shall have given

liberāverō

pugnāverimus

superābitis

they will set free

portāverunt

vāstāverātis

salūtābant

we shall have killed



Julius Caesar's statue in Rome

"Foto ENIT ROMA"

9B. (1) *Read*

JULIUS CAESAR PUNISHES THE PIRATES

Ōlim pirātae Iūliumprehendērunt

In Republican and Imperial Rome it was customary for promising Roman youths to study rhetoric (the art of eloquent speech) for, in order to climb the ladder of success in public office, it was essential for a citizen to be a good orator.

Thus Julius Caesar went to the island of Rhodes to study rhetoric under the great Appolonius Molo. On his voyage thither he was captured by pirates who infested those seas at that time. The pirates demanded a ransom of 50 talents (about R24,000 or £12,000).

Julius Caesar communicated with his relatives and friends and asked them to pay the ransom. The pirates promised to release Caesar as soon as the ransom was paid, adding

‘Ubi Iūlium liberāverimus, (Iūlius) Rōmam nāvigābit.’

The ransom was paid.

Pirātae simulac pecūniam accēpērunt, Iūlium liberāvērunt.

Iūlius maximē irātus erat. Nautās convocāvit et ad pirātārum insulam nāvigāvit.

Iūlius ‘Si’ inquit ‘pirātās prehenderō, pirātās necābō.’ Deinde pirātās oppugnāvit.

Iūlius et nautae fortiter pugnāvērunt; pirātās superāvērunt. Deinde Iūlius pirātās prehendit et necāvit.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card of Unit 9B(1)** (Card 19) and check your work.

* *Preparatory reading*

1. Where did the pirates live? 1. **Pirātae in insulā habitābant.**
2. With what did Caesar kill the pirates? 2. **Caesar pirātās hastīs necāvit.**

The two italicised words above are ablatives.

35 The preposition *in* is used with the *ablative* to denote **position in which**, as in frame (1) above.

36 The **Ablative of the Instrument** denotes the instrument by which an action takes place, as in frame (2) above.

FIRST DECLENSION: A-NOUNS

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa <i>a table</i>	mēnsae <i>tables</i>
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa <i>O table</i>	mēnsae <i>O tables</i>
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam <i>table</i>	mēnsās <i>tables</i>
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae <i>of a table, the table's</i>	mēnsārum <i>of tables, the tables'</i>
<i>Dative</i>	mēnsae <i>to, for a table</i>	mēnsis <i>to, for tables</i>
37 <i>Ablative</i>	mēnsā <i>by, with, from a table</i>	mēnsis <i>by, with, from tables</i>

9B. (2) Read

JULIUS CAESAR PUNISHES THE PIRATES

Pirātae in insulā habitābant. Iūlius nautās convocāvit et ad insulam nāvigāvit. Iūlius pirātās oppugnāvit, nam ōlim pirātae Iūlium prehenderant. Pirātae fortiter pugnāvērunt. Iūlius autem pirātās superāvit et hastīs sagittisque necāvit.

After Caesar had killed some pirates, he crucified the rest.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 9B(2) (Card 20) and check your work.

9C. Answer and/or translate

1. (a) Translate <i>pirates</i> in <i>The pirates will attack the island</i> . (b) State its case and number (c) Motivate	
2. Which of the following words are conjunctions? diū, necō, nam, dō, sī, in, pirāta	1. (a) Pirātae 7 8 (b) Nominative Plural (7 8) (c) Plural subject of sentence (7 8)
3. Which tense is used with <i>sī</i> in the subordinate clause in (<i>Saltābit</i>), <i>sī cantāveris</i> ?	2. nam, sī (V9 23)
4. Which of the two actions mentioned in the sentence in frame (3) will, conditionally speaking, take place before the other? (a) the singing (b) the dancing	3. Future Perfect active 33
5. Which of the following words are prepositions? ad, quod, necō, in, dea, atque, circum, fortiter.	4. The singing (32 33)
6. (a) State the case of <i>sagittīs</i> in <i>Puella rānās sagittīs necāvit</i> . (b) Motivate	5. ad, in, circum V6 V9 V4
7. (a) State the case of <i>aquā</i> in <i>Rānae in aquā habitant</i> . (b) Motivate.	6. (a) Ablative 37 36 (b) Ablative of the instrument 36

<p><i>Translate</i></p> <p>8. The pirate will have killed a dove with an arrow.</p>	<p>7. (a) Ablative 37 35 (b) <i>in</i>+abl. denote position in which 35</p>
<p>9. The doves will fly into the wood.</p>	<p>8. Pirāta columbam sagittā necāverit. 7 8 17 - 19 37 36 5 33</p>
<p>10. We shall have wandered in the woods.</p>	<p>9. Columbae in silvam volābunt. 7 8 21 18 21 15 6</p>
<p>11. You (s.) greet the farmer's daughter in the farm-house.</p>	<p>10. In silvis errāverimus. 35 37 33</p>
	<p>11. Agricolae filiam in villā salūtās. 26 27 17 - 19 35 37 2 V3</p>

9D. *Translate into Latin*

1. I shall give the pirates money, when they have set the sailors free.
2. As soon as I have pacified the inhabitants on the island, I shall sail to Britain.
3. Paul has not killed the farmer with a spear.
4. If the sailors attack the island, they will conquer the inhabitants.
5. We shall kill the pirates, for they have seized the island.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 9D** (Card 21) and check your work.

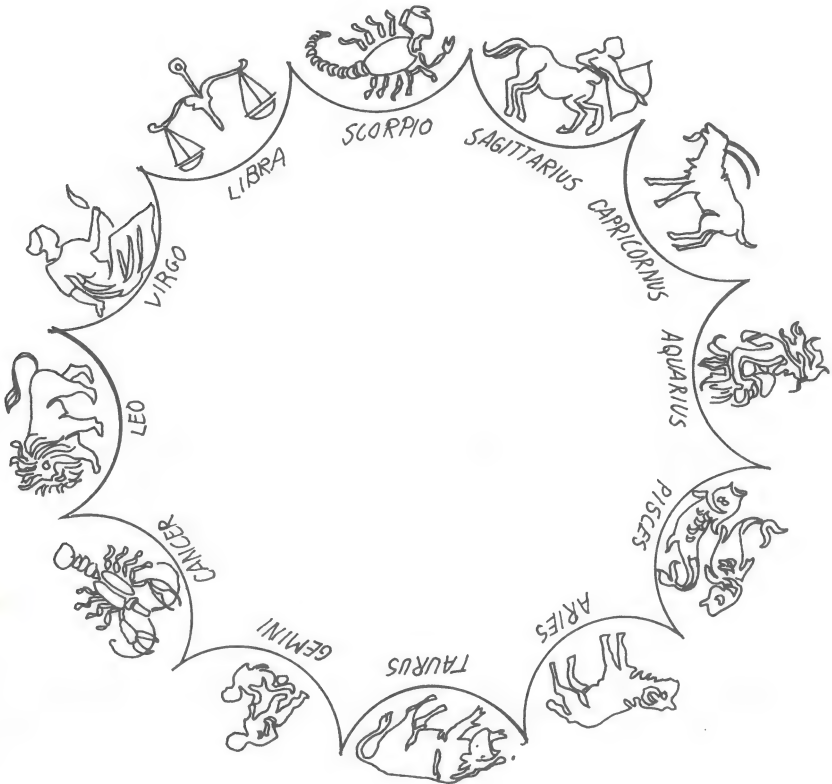
- 9E. Write a sentence in Latin containing an ablative and a verb in the Future Perfect.

UNIT 10

WRITING THE DATE THE ROMAN WAY

The Roman year under Romulus had ten months only, beginning on March 1st and containing 304 days. Numa Pompilius is said to have added January and February to increase the total number of days to 355. This year was supplemented by intercalary days to correspond with the solar year.

On the advice of Sosigenes, Julius Caesar reformed the calendar to make the normal year 365 days, adding an intercalary day every fourth year. This is virtually our present calendar, for the names of the English months differ little from the original Latin names.



Signs of the Zodiac

Three days in the Roman month had particular names, viz.

- (a) **The Calends** (*Kalendae*), the first day of the month, which originally indicated the new moon. The *Kalendae* or *Calendae* are connected with the verb *calō*, to proclaim. On this day the *Pontifex* proclaimed the special festive days of the month;

- (b) **The Nones**, called *Nōnae* because it was the ninth day before the Ides (reckoned inclusively); it fell on the 5th or 7th day, and
- (c) **The Ides** (*Idūs*) which originally indicated the day of the full moon and fell on the 13th or 15th day.

As indicated above, the Nones and the Ides did not fall on the same day in all months. The following couplet fully explains the difference, viz.

In March, July, October and May

The Nones were on the seventh day.

(Consequently the Ides on the 15th day.)

The months not mentioned in the couplet had the Nones and the Ides on the 5th and 13th respectively.

The Romans calculated the date by reckoning backwards and inclusively from each of the three specially named days, and then stating the date as "such and such day before . . ."

Examples:—

1. *2nd December*

- = 5 (Non. Dec.) + 1 (inclusive) — 2
- = 4th day before the Nones of December
- = IV(th) day before Nōn. Dec.

2. *8th December*

- = 13 (Id. Dec.) + 1 (inclusive) — 8
- = 6th day before the Ides of December
- = VI(th) day before Id. Dec.

3. *20th December*

- = 31 (no. of days Dec.) + 1 (inclusive) + 1 (1st Jan.) — 20
- = 13th day before the Calends of January
- = XIII (th) day before Kal. Iān.

4. Note that the Romans never used the second day before

e.g. 12th December is *pridie Id. Dec.*, that is the day before the Ides of December.

5. The specially named days were written as follows:

Kalendīs Decembribus, Kal. Dec.

Nōnīs Decembribus, Nōn. Dec.

Idibus Decembribus, Id Dec.

The Roman months were actually adjectives which agreed with *Nōnae*, *Idus* and *Kalendae*. Abbreviated, the Roman months were: *Iān.*, *Feb.*, *Mart.*, *Apr.*, *Mai.*, *Iūn.*, *Iūl.* (formerly *Quintilis*), *Aug.* (formerly *Sextilis*), *Sept.*, *Oct.*, *Nov.*, *Dec.*

10A. The names *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* are derived from **quinque** (five) and **sex** (six). Can you explain why originally July was called *Quintilis* and August *Sextilis*?

10B. Write the English date for the following and name the holiday referred to in each case:

- (a) VIII (th) day before the Calends of January
- (b) *Pridiē Kal. Iūn.*
- (c) VI (th) day before the Ides of October



Emperor Augustus, Vatican Museum, Rome

— “Foto Alinari”

- (d) VII (th) day before the Calends of January
- (e) XVII (th) day before the Calends of January
- (f) Kalendis Jānuāriis
- (g) VIII (th) day before the Ides of April

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 10B (Card 22) and check your work.

10C. Can you account for the names of any other months when you know that **septem** is *seven*; **octō**, *eight*; **novem**, *nine* and **decem**, *ten*?

10D. Write the following dates the Roman way:

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| (a) 1st January | (e) 5th February | (i) 15th March |
| (b) 3rd April | (f) 3rd May | (j) 9th June |
| (c) 12th October | (g) 20th September | (k) 10th July |
| (d) 31st December | (h) 8th August | (l) 2nd November |

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 10D (Card 23) and check your work.

10E. Write your own birthday and that of your teacher the Roman way.

N.B. 1. It is interesting to note that the Romans used to reckon 24th February twice over in a leap-year.

2. Never say, “I’ll do my homework on the Greek Calends.”
That would mean *never*.

UNIT 11

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES (F.)

* *Preparatory reading*

Angela's Cottage

1. <i>Casa bella est.</i>	1. The cottage is beautiful.
2. <i>Angela villam magnam nōn amat.</i>	2. Angela does not like a big farmhouse.
3. <i>Casae parvae iānuam spectō.</i>	3. I am looking at the door of the small cottage.
4. <i>Angela casam rosīs bellīs ōrnat.</i>	4. Angela decorates the cottage with lovely roses.

In the above sentences **adjectives** have been used in various cases.

38 An **adjective** is a word which **qualifies a noun**, describing its properties, e.g. You play with a *beautiful* doll.

39 Adjectives are **used**

- (a) attributively, as in frames (2), (3) and (4) above.
- (b) predicatively as in frame (1) above.

40 In Latin an adjective **agrees with the noun** it qualifies in three respects, viz.

- (a) in *gender* (m., f., or n.)
- (b) in *number* (singular or plural)
- (c) in *case* (Nom., Voc., Acc., etc.)

Thus adjectives are of three genders, viz., masculine, feminine and neuter. In the above the feminine only has been used.

41 **Word order:** Adjectives in Latin follow the nouns they qualify except

- (a) those denoting amount or number (**multus, -a, -um, many**), e.g. *Multās hastās dedī. I have given many spears.*
- (b) When stressed, e.g.

Meus servus labōrat, sed tuus servus pūgnat.

My slave works, but your slave fights.

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>		magna			magnae	
<i>Voc.</i>		magna			magnae	
<i>Acc.</i>		mag ⁿ am			mag ⁿ ās	
<i>Gen.</i>		magnae			mag ⁿ ārūm	
<i>Dat.</i>		magnae			magnis	
<i>Abl.</i>		mag ⁿ ā			magnis	

What similarity do you notice with regard to a pattern you have met before?

Vocabulary 11

aedificō (1), *build*

ōrnō (1), *decorate*

iānua, -ae, f., *door*

fenestra, -ae, f., *window*

rosa, -ae, f., *rose*

magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*

parvus, -a, -um, *small*

bellus, -a, -um, *beautiful, lovely*

albus, -a, -um, *white*



An old English cottage and a country lane

— Photo United Kingdom Information Services

11A. Drill

1. Conjugate *aedificō* and *ōrnō* in six tenses of the indicative active.
2. Give the principal parts of *ōrnō* and *aedificō*.
3. (a) Decline together in the singular: *villa magna, casa parva*
(b) Decline together in the plural: *rosa bella, villa magna*.

11B. Read

ANGELA'S COTTAGE

Angela in villā magnā nōn habitat; in casā parvā habitat. Angelae casa bella est.

Angela villam magnam nōn amat; casam parvam maximē amat. Angela casam nōn aedificāvit; agricola casam parvam aedificāverat. Casae iānuam et fenestrās spectāmus.

Angela agricolam in casā parvā adiuvat; casam rosis bellis semper ōrnat.

Columbae albae ad casam saepe volant. Angela columbis albis aquam semper dat.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 11B (Card 24) and check your work.

11C. Answer and/or translate

1. Select the adjectives from the following list: magna, iānuā, parva, casa, ōrnō, diū, alba, sī	
2. In the sentence <i>Ītaliae nautae insulam parvam oppugnāvērunt</i> state (a) the subject	1. magna, parva, alba (38 V11)
(b) the adjective	2. (a) nautae 7 8
(c) in which three respects the adjective agrees with its noun and motivate with reference to <i>insulam</i>	2. (b) parvam 38 42
(d) if the adjective is used attributively or predicatively	2. (c) (i) gender: f. because <i>insula</i> is f. (ii) number: singular because <i>insula</i> is sing. (iii) case: acc. because <i>insulam</i> is acc. (object) 40 42
(e) if the adjective should follow or precede the noun it qualifies.	2. (d) attributively 39a

<i>Translate</i>	
3. small girls (subject)	2. (e) follow 41
4. of a small girl	3. puellae parvae 7 8 40 42
5. with a great spear	4. puellae parvae 26 27 40 42
6. to a large wood (motion)	5. hastā magnā 36 37 40 42
7. in a small cottage	6. ad silvam magnam 21 19 21 40 42
8. I give roses to the lovely girls.	7. in casā parvā 35 37 40 42
	8. Puellis bellis rosās dō. 30 31 40 42 17 2

11D. *Translate into Latin*

1. The sailors of Rome are carrying big spears and small arrows.
2. The farmer has built a big farm-house on the small island.
3. The teacher likes white roses very much.
4. I shall not attack the island with small arrows.
5. Philip had given the white doves water.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 11D** (Card 25) and check your work.

11E. Write a Latin sentence containing an adjective in any case. Avoid words like *agricola* and *nauta* in your sentence. Why?

UNIT 12

SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

* *Preparatory reading*

Bacchus is taken by Pirates

1. Pirātae ad insulam appropinquābant, dum Bacchus in ōrā iacēbat.	1. The pirates were approaching the island, while Bacchus was lying on the shore.
2. Pirātae virum in orā vident.	2. The pirates see a man on the shore.
3. Bacchus pirātās terrēbit.	3. Bacchus will frighten the pirates.

The sentences in the above frames contain examples of the **present stem tenses** of the **second conjugation verbs**.

SECOND CONJUGATION: E-VERBS

43 Indicative Mood

Present stem: **monē-**

Active

(a) PRESENT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-ō</i>	monēō	<i>I advise, I am advising, I do advise</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-s</i>	monēs	<i>You (s.) advise, etc.</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-t</i>	monet	<i>He, she advises</i>
Pl. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-mus</i>	monēmus	<i>We advise</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-tis</i>	monētis	<i>You (pl.) advise</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-nt</i>	monet	<i>They advise</i>

(b) IMPERFECT TENSE				
Sing. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bam</i>	monēbam	<i>I was advising, used to advise</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bās</i>	monēbās	<i>You (s.) were advising</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bat</i>	monēbat	<i>He, she was advising</i>
Pl. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bāmus</i>	monēbāmus	<i>We were advising</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bātis</i>	monēbātis	<i>You (pl.) were advising</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bant</i>	monēbant	<i>They were advising</i>

(c) FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE				
Sing. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bō</i>	<i>monēbō</i>	<i>I shall advise; shall be advising</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bis</i>	<i>monēbis</i>	<i>You (s.) will advise, etc.</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bit</i>	<i>monēbit</i>	<i>He, she will advise</i>
Pl. 1	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bimus</i>	<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>We shall advise</i>
2	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bitis</i>	<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>You (pl.) will advise</i>
3	<i>monē-</i>	<i>-bunt</i>	<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>They will advise</i>

What similarity is evident with regard to Present stem endings of first conjugation verbs?

44 The conjunction **dum**, *while* is used with the tense indicated in both principal and subordinate clause if the same duration of time is expressed in both clauses, as in frame (1) above, i.e. if it has the sense of *for as long as*.

Vocabulary 12

monēō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *advise, warn*
timeō, -ēre, -uī (2), *fear, afraid of*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *frighten, scare, terrify*
prehendēmus, we shall seize; from
prehendō (3), *seize, lay hold of (people)*
iaceō, -ēre, -uī, (-itum), 2, *lie down*
videō, -ēre, vidī, visum (2), *see*
delphinus, -ī, m., dolphin
dum (conj.), *while*

rideō, -ēre, risī, risum (2), *laugh, laugh at*
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētum (2), *weep, lament*
respondeō, -ēre, -dī, -sum (2), *reply, answer*
dēportō, (1), carry off
ōra, -ae, f., shore
unda, -ae, f., wave
patria, -ae, f., fatherland
mox (adv.), *soon*

12A. Drill

1. Conjugate the verbs in Vocabulary 12 in the three present stem tenses.
2. Decline *unda, iānua* and *patria* fully in the sing. and pl.
3. Give the principal parts of *dēportō, terreō* and *videō*.
4. Translate orally

vidēbimus
timent
iacebunt
he will weep

flet
ridēbat
flēbāmus
you (pl.) see

terrēbātis
respondēbō
dēportātis
they were fearing



Michael Angelo's
Bacchus in the
National Museum,
Florence

— Photo "Museo Nazionale Firenze"

PIRATES ARE CHANGED INTO DOLPHINS

Bacchus was held in high esteem by the mortals (humans), because he had given them the vine and had taught them the art of making wine. He was also the patron of the vineyards. He was often depicted with vine leaves or bunches of grapes decorating his head. His activities very often carried him far away from Olympus, where he dwelt with the rest of the gods. On one of his numerous voyages he steered his little boat to an island to rest his weary body . . .

• Dum *Bacchus* in ōrā iacēbat, pirātae ad insulam appropinquābant. Pirāta
• ‘*Virum*’ inquit ‘in ōrā videō’.

The pirates looked in the direction indicated. Yes, it was true. They noticed a man on the shore and he seemed to be asleep. They immediately saw an opportunity of seizing the man and selling him as a slave in their fatherland.

• Pirātae ‘*Virum*prehendēmus’ respondent ‘atque ad patriam dēportābimus.’

Thereupon the pirates placed the sleeping man on the deck of their ship and sailed away. The “man”, however, soon awoke and looked around him.

• Bacchus undās et aquam videt, sed nōn timet. Bacchus ‘*Mox*’ inquit ‘pirātās
• terrēbō. Ubi pirātae timēbunt, ridēbō.’

He immediately caused a vine to spring up in the centre of the ship. It grew skywards quickly. Within minutes the vine was covered with leaves and bunches of delicious grapes. At the same time the sails of the ship changed colour from white to purple. When the pirates noticed this miraculous change, they ran to the man they had taken on board.

• Pirātae Bacchum spectant; flent, quod timent. Pirātae ‘*Errāvimus*’
• inquirunt.

Before another word could be uttered a number of fierce lions and tigers rose from the sea and attacked the terrified pirates. With a last desperate look in the direction of Bacchus the pirates hurled themselves into the sea. But Jupiter had mercy on them.

• Iuppiter pirātās in delphinōs mūtāvit.

With the aid of Neptune, god of the sea, who supplied a favourable wind, Bacchus continued his voyage in safety.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 12B (Card 26) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Bacchus, -ī, m., *Bacchus*, god of wine

virum, acc. sing. of **vir**, **virī**, m., a man

inquirunt, they say, they said

12C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which of the following words are verbs? parva, magna, timeō, aedificō, fleō, bella, unda, mox, videō	
2. Which of the verbs in frame (1) belong to the second conjugation?	1. timeō, aedificō, fleō, videō 43 V11 (43 V12)
3. Explain how the present stem of a second conjugation verb differs from that of a first conjugation verb with reference to the ending.	2. timeō, fleō, videō (V12 43)
4. In the sentence <i>Puellae villās magnās vident</i> state (a) Subject, case and number	3. The second conjugation has the present stem ending in <i>ē</i> and the first in <i>ā</i> . 2 43
(b) Object, case and number	4. (a) <i>Puellae</i> , nominative, plural 7 8 7 8 7 8
(c) Predicate, tense and person	4. (b) <i>villās</i> , accusative, plural (17 19)
(d) Adjective, case and gender	4. (c) <i>vident</i> , Present indicative active, third person plural (43a 18 6)
<i>Translate</i>	
5. We weep, while you (pl.) laugh.	4. (d) <i>magnās</i> , accusative, f. (38 40a 42)
6. They will fear the big waves.	5. <i>Flēmus</i> , dum <i>ridētis</i> . 43a 44 43a
7. When they attack, I shall see (use <i>video</i>) the sailors.	6. <i>Undās magnās timebunt</i> . 17 18 42 40 43c
8. The pirates are not afraid of the water.	7. <i>Ubi oppugnābunt</i> , <i>nautās</i> 34 34 15 17 <i>vidēbō</i> . 43c
	8. <i>Pirātae aquam nōn timent</i> . 7 8 17 18 V2 43a

12D. *Translate into Latin*

1. Marcus and the sailors were frightening the inhabitants of the island with spears.
 2. We do not see the daughters of the farmer in the farm-house.
 3. While Bacchus was lying on the shore, the pirates were sailing to the island.
 4. They carried off the beautiful goddess to (their) fatherland.
 5. When they fly away, you (s.) will see the white doves.
- ** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 12D** (Card 27) and check your work.
- 12E. Write your own Latin sentence using a second conjugation verb in a present stem tense.

TEST 2

1. From the list <i>unda, magna, mox, iānua, timeō, in, ad, rīdeō, convocō, dum, postquam, quod, autem</i> and <i>ōlim</i> select (a) the verbs (b) the conjunctions (c) the adverbs
2. Give (a) the present stem of <i>videō, timeō</i> (b) the perfect stem of <i>dēportō, dō</i>
3. In the sentence <i>Agricolae pirātārum insulam vidēbunt</i> state and explain (a) the case of <i>agricolae</i> (b) the case of <i>pirātārum</i> (c) the case of <i>insulam</i>
4. What does the figure indicate in <i>moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, (2)</i> ?
5. Write the Roman way: 15th May
6. State the tense of the following: (a) <i>timēbitis</i> (b) <i>aedificāverat</i> (c) <i>dedit</i> (d) <i>flent</i>
<i>Translate</i>
7. The girls did not give white roses to the pirates.
8. You (s.) will soon see (use <i>videō</i>) the farmer's daughter on the shore.
9. If we walk into the wood, we shall see (use <i>videō</i>) a cottage.
10. He was frightening the inhabitants of the island with spears.
11. While we were laughing, they were crying.
12. After we had praised the inhabitants, we sailed to Rome.
13. We are crying, because the doves flew away yesterday.

**** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Test 2 (Card 28) and check your work.**

UNIT 13

* Preparatory reading

The first men to fly

1. <i>Daedalus Graecus erat.</i>	1. Daedalus was a Greek.
2. <i>Daedalus servum habēbat.</i>	2. Daedalus had (used to have) a slave.
3. <i>Daedalus servum sculptūram docēbat.</i>	3. Daedalus was teaching his slave sculpture.
4. <i>Servum statuās fabricāre nōn vetuit.</i>	4. He did not forbid his slave to make statues.
5. <i>Īcarus Daedalī filius erat.</i>	5. Icarus was the son of Daedalus.
6. <i>Thēseus et amīcī Athēnās nāvi-gāvērunt.</i>	6. Theseus and his friends sailed to Athens.
7. <i>Daedalus et Icarus ex labyrinthō ēvolant.</i>	7. Daedalus and Icarus fly out of the labyrinth.

In the above frames **second declension nouns** have been used in various cases.

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS

45 (a) *servus, -i, m., slave*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>servus</i> slave	<i>servi</i> slaves
Voc.	<i>serve</i> O slave	<i>servi</i> O slaves
Acc.	<i>servum</i> slave	<i>servōs</i> slaves
Gen.	<i>servi</i> of a slave	<i>servōrum</i> of slaves
Dat.	<i>servō</i> to, for a slave	<i>servis</i> to, for slaves
Abl.	<i>servō</i> by, with, from a slave	<i>servis</i> by, with, from slaves

(b) *magister, -tri, m., teacher*

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom.	<i>magister</i> teacher	<i>magistri</i> teachers
Voc.	<i>magister</i> O teacher	<i>magistri</i> O teachers
Acc.	<i>magistrum</i> teacher	<i>magistrōs</i> teachers
Gen.	<i>magistri</i> of a teacher	<i>magistrōrum</i> of teachers
Dat.	<i>magistrō</i> to, for a teacher	<i>magistris</i> to, for teachers
Abl.	<i>magistrō</i> by, with, from a teacher	<i>magistris</i> by, with, from teachers

What similarity do you notice between the first and second declensions with regard to the case endings of the accusative?

Vocabulary 13

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2) + inf., *forbid, prevent, keep off*
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum (2) + inf., *order, command*
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2) + inf., *ought, owe*
habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *have, hold*
doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum (2) + 2 acc., *teach*
vetō, -āre, -uī, -itum (1) + inf., *forbid*
adiuvō, -āre, -iuvī, -ūtum (1) + inf., *help, assist*
ē, ex (prep. + abl.), *out of, from*

fabricō (1), *make, form*
amicus, -ī, m., *friend*
dominus, -ī, m., *lord, master*
filius, -ii, m., *son* (voc. sing. *filii*)
statua, -ae, f., *statue*
sculptūra, -ae, f., *sculpture*
multus, -a, -um, *much*; pl., *many*
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful*

46 (a) The verbs *adiuvo* (1), *vetō* (1), *prohibeō* (2), *iubeō* (2) and *dēbeō* (2) are used with the **infinitive** (called **Prolative Infinitive**) of other verbs. The same rule applies to *incipiō* (3), *cōstituō* (3) and *in animō habeō* (The infinitive of *amō* is *amāre*, *to love*; of *moneō*, *monēre*, *to advise*).

(b) The infinitive thus used can also take an object like *statuās fabricāre* in (4) above.

47 The verb *doceō* can take **two objects**, both in the accusative, as in (3) above.

48 The preposition **ex** (*ē*), *out of, from*, is used with the *ablative* and denotes *motion out of or from*, as in (7) above. Generally, *ē* is used with *consonants* (b, s, r, p, d, etc.) and *ex* with *vowels* (a, e, i, o, u) and *h*, although *ex* is commonly found with all letters.

49 **Place from which and at which:** The preposition is omitted before the names of towns, cities and small islands, e.g.

Rōmā, from *Rome*
Athēnīs, from *Athens*

Rōmae, at *Rome* (Locative)
Athēnīs, at *Athens* (Locative)

50 **The Locative rule:** In Old Latin the locative in -ī was a special case to indicate place where, e.g. *Rōmaī*, at *Rome*. Gradually,

(a) the genitive was introduced for 1st and 2nd declension nouns in the singular, e.g.

Rōmae, at *Rome* *Trōiae*, at *Troy* *Corinthī*, at *Corinth*

(b) plural nouns and third declension nouns took to the ablative, e.g.

Athēnīs, at *Athens* *Gabiīs*, at *Gabii* *Carthāgine*, at *Carthage*

(c) Note: The Locative singular of the third declension ends in *i* or *e*.

13A. Drill

1. Decline fully in the sing.: *amicus*, *servus*, *sculptūra*, *filius*, *statua* in the pl.: *amicus*, *Athēnae*, *statua*, *filius*
2. Conjugate in the three present stem tenses: *doceō*, *dēbeō*, *vetō*, *prohibeō*, *iubeō*
3. Give the principal parts of *adiuvō*, *iubeō*, *doceō*
4. Translate orally

valē, O *fili*
Athēnīs (2x)
ē casā
 at *Rome*

necāre nōn dēbēs *iubet*
adiuvāre dēbēbis *prohibētis*
servum docēre vetuit *docēbāmus*
 you (pl.) will forbid (2x) we teach

DAEDALUS AND ICARUS: THE FIRST MEN TO FLY

Daedalus Graecus erat; Athēnīs habitābat. Statuās multās et pulchrās fabricāvit. Graeci 'Ō Daedale' saepe inquirunt 'statuae pulchrae sunt.'

Daedalus servum *callidum* habēbat; *nōmen* erat *Talus*. Daedalus Talum sculptūrā docēbat. Daedalus servum statuās fabricāre nōn vetuit; servum statuās fabricāre saepe iubēbat. Talus itaque Daedalum statuās fabricāre adiūvit. Graeci 'Ō Tale' saepe inquirunt 'statuae pulchrae sunt.'

Daedalus became jealous when his admirers began to praise the work of his slave. Accordingly, he killed Talus. On account of this deed Daedalus had to flee from Athens. He took his son with him.

Daedalus et Īcarus ad *Crētā* nāvigāverunt. Īcarus Daedali filius erat.

Daedalus, being a very crafty man, was employed by Minos, the king of Crete, to build a labyrinth for the Minotaur, a fierce monster. This task he completed with such skill that anyone who entered this maze could not find his way out again. To this labyrinth seven young men and seven young women of Athens were sent annually to be devoured by the Minotaur. This ordeal had been enforced on the Athenians by the king of Crete after he had subjugated Athens. One day, Theseus, son of the king of Athens, volunteered to accompany the thirteen wretched Athenians in order to kill the Minotaur.



Remains of the palace of Minos, Crete
— Photo Royal Hellenic Embassy

Thēseus et amīci et amīcae ad *Crētā* nāvigāvērunt. *Mīnos* insulae dominus erat. *Mīnos* Thēseum et amīcōs spectāvit.

When the fourteen Athenians arrived on the island, Ariadne, the king's daughter, fell in love with Theseus and promised to assist him. Having ascertained the secret of the labyrinth from Daedalus, she disclosed to Theseus how he could emerge from the maze, if he killed the Minotaur.

Thēseus *Mīnōtaurum* necāvit. Thēseus et *Ariadnē* et amīci Athēnās nāvīgāvērunt.

Minos was furious because the secret of the labyrinth had been disclosed to Theseus. Accordingly, he imprisoned Daedalus and Icarus in the labyrinth.

Daedalus 'Ō Icare' inquit 'ē *labyrinthō* ēvolābimus. Ālās fabricābimus. Adiuvāre dēbēs.' Ālās fabricāvērunt.

When the wings of wax and feathers had been completed, Daedalus fitted them. He warned his son not to fly too high, for the heat of the burning sun would melt the wax of his wings.

Daedalus Īcarō ālās dederat. Ē *labyrinthō* ālis ēvolāvērunt. Daedalus Īcarum frustrā monet; filium *frustrā* vocat.

Icarus flew higher and higher until the burning sun melted the wax of his wings and he fell into the sea. The place where he fell still bears his name.

Daedalus flet.



Daedalus and Icarus fashioning their wings.
Bas-relief in the Villa Albani, Rome

— "Fot. Alinari"

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 13B** (Card 29) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Daedalus, -ī, m., *Daedalus*
Graecus, -ī, m., *a Greek*
Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., *Athens*
inquiunt, *they say, said*
sunt, *they are* (see *sum*)
callidus, -a, -um, *crafty, shrewd*
nōmen, -inis, n., *name*
Talus, -ī, m., *Talus*
Īcarus, -ī, m., *Icarus*

Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete*
Thēseus, -ī, m., *Theseus*
amica, -ae, f., *friend (f.)*
Mīnos, -ōis, m., *Minos, the king of Crete*
Mīnōtaurus, -ī, m., *the Minotaur*
Ariadnē, -ēs, f., *Ariadne, daughter of Minos*
labyrinthus, -ī, m., *labyrinth, maze*
āla, -ae, f., *wing*
frustrā (adv.), *in vain*

13C. Answer and/or translate

1. Select the nouns from the following list: doceō, vetō, amicus, multus, servus, dum, dominus, agricola, magister	
2. Which of the nouns in frame (1) belong to the second declension?	1. amicus, servus, dominus, (V13) agricola, magister V3 V13
3. In <i>Magister servum terrēbit</i> state (a) Object, case and gender (b) Tense and person of the verb	2. amicus servus dominus magister (V13 45)
4. In <i>Marcus servōs columbās fugarē prohibet</i> state (a) the infinitive (b) the object of the infinitive	3. (a) servum, accusative, m. (17 18 45a) (b) Future Simple 3rd person singular 43c
5. Which second conjugation verb takes two accusatives?	4. (a) fugāre 46a (b) columbās 46b 19
<i>Translate</i>	
6. At Pretoria; from Pretoria	5. dōceo 47
7. Out of the fatherland; at Athens	6. Pretōriae; Pretōriā 50a 49 49
8. We order the slaves to attack.	7. Ex (ē) patriā; Athēnis 48 50b 49
9. I gave the slave's son water.	8. Servōs oppugnāre iubēmus. 17 45a 46a 46a 43a
10. In the master's farm-house	9. Servi filiō aquam dedi. 26 45a 45a 17 19 24 30
11. To the masters' cottages (motion)	10. in magistrī villā 35 26 45b 37
	11. ad magistrōrum casās 20 26 45b 21 19

13D. *Translate into Latin*

1. The friend of Marcus orders the slaves to drive the inhabitants away from the island.
2. We will forbid the slaves to frighten the little girls.
3. Daedalus ought to teach the slave's son sculpture; I will teach (my) friend sculpture.
4. When they approach the garden, we shall see the friends.
5. At Rome; at Athens; from Rome; from Athens; to Athens (motion); out of the farm-house.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 13D** (Card 30) and check your work.

13E. Write your own Latin sentence using nouns of the second declension.

UNIT 14

SECOND DECLENSION NOUNS



Juno (Hera), Vatican Museum, Rome

— "Fot. Alinari"

* *Preparatory reading*

The Siege of Troy

1. Paris Venerī mālum aureum dedit.	1. Paris gave Venus the golden apple.
2. Iūno et Minerva irātae erant.	2. Juno and Minerva were angry.

3. Menelāus Graecōs auxiliūm rogāvit.	3. Menelaus asked the Greeks assistance.
4. Graecī Menelāum adiuvāre dēbent.	4. The Greeks ought to help Menelaus.
5. Graecī multa nāvigia fabricāvērunt.	5. The Greeks built many ships.
6. Graecī Īlium novem annōs obsident.	6. The Greeks besiege Ilium for nine years.

In the above frames **second declension neuter nouns** have been used. They are declined like *bellum* below.

51 (a) bellum, -ī, n., war

Case	Singular	Plural
Nom.	bellum war	bella wars
Voc.	bellum 0 war	bella 0 wars
Acc.	bellum war	bella wars
Gen.	bellī of a war, war's	bellōrum of wars, wars'
Dat.	bellō to, for a war	bellis to, for wars
Abl.	bellō by, with, from a war	bellis by, with, from wars

(b) puer, -erī, m., boy

Nom.	puer boy	puerī boys
Voc.	puer 0 boy	puerī 0 boys
Acc.	puerum boy	puerōs boys
Gen.	puerī of a boy, boy's	puerōrum of boys, boys'
Dat.	puerō to, for a boy	puerīs to, for boys
Abl.	puerō by, with, from a boy	puerīs by, with, from boys

Vocabulary 14

rogō (1) + 2 acc., ask

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum (2), besiege

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum (2), destroy

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum (2), remain, stay

expugnō (1), take by storm

aureus, -a, -um, golden

statim (adv.), immediately, at once

mūrus, -ī, m., wall

annus, -ī, m., year

mālum, -ī, n., apple

nāvigium, -ii, n., ship, boat, vessel

auxilium, -ii, n., assistance, help, aid

oppidum, -ī, n., town

novem, nine

52 The verb **rogō** (1), *ask* can also be used with **two accusatives** as in frame (3) above (*Graecōs* and *auxilium* are accusatives).

53 Time how long is expressed by the *accusative without a preposition*, e.g. **multōs annōs**, for many years **novem annōs**, for nine years.

14A. Drill

1. Decline fully in the sing. and pl.: *oppidum, mālum, nāvigium, annus, unda* and *insula*.
2. Conjugate *dēleō, obsideō* and *maneō* in the three present stem tenses of the indicative active.
3. Conjugate the six indicative active tenses of *rogō, vetō*.
4. Give the principal parts of *maneō, dēleō, vetō, adiuvō* and *obsideō*.
5. Translate orally

<i>puerō</i>	<i>in oppidō</i>	<i>ex oppidīs</i>
<i>oppidī</i>	<i>oppidī mūrus</i>	<i>ad oppidum</i>
<i>the boy's apples</i>	<i>you (s.) will besiege</i>	<i>he took by storm</i>
<i>the boys' town</i>	<i>we were destroying</i>	<i>they will remain</i>



Venus,
National Museum,
Naples
— "Fot. Alinari"

- 14B. Read and ask for the Control Card of Unit 14B when you have read as much as required by your teacher. The ideal procedure is to read all the Latin, but, if not possible, read as much as you can before controlling.

THE TROJAN WAR

1. The Siege of Troy

By way of introduction to the story of Rome, let us read some passages on the Trojan War, for, traditionally, Rome was of Trojan origin. See also "Facts on the founding of Rome" in Unit 17.

All the gods and goddesses attended the marriage festival of Peleus and Thetis, the nymph, but Eris (Discordia), the goddess of strife, was not invited. To take revenge for this insult Eris threw a golden apple on which was written "For the fairest" among the guests at the festival. Juno, Minerva and Venus at once claimed the apple, but Jupiter refused to decide the issue, and referred the contestants to Paris, a herdsman at the foot of Mount Ida.



The site of ancient Sparta

— Photo Royal Hellenic Embassy

Menelāus Graecōs auxilium statim rogāvit. Graeci 'Menelāum' inquiunt 'adiuvāre debēmus.' Deinde multa nāvigia fabricāvērunt. Graeci simulatque multa nāvigia fabricāvērunt, Trōiam navigāvērunt. Pueri et puellae in Graeciā manent.

In this way a vast host advanced against Troy.

Īlium erat oppidum magnum. Trōiae mūrī altī et validī erant. Graeci Īlium oppugnāvērunt, sed nōn expugnāvērunt. Itaque Īlium obsident. Trōiani autem bellum nōn timent. Graeci Īlium novem annōs obsēdērunt, Trōianōs autem nōndum superāverānt.

Deinde Graeci terram finitimam dēlent.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card of Unit 14B** (Card 31) and check your work.

Reference Vocabulary

Paris, -idis, m., *Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy*

Venerī, dative of Venus, -eris, f., *Venus, Roman goddess of love*

Helena, -ae, f., *Helen, wife of Menelaus, king of Sparta*

Iūno, -ōnis, f., *Juno, queen of the gods (Hera in Greece)*

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva, goddess of wisdom and art (Athena in Greece)*

Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*

Menelāus, -i, m., *Menelaus, king of Sparta*

Graecus, -i, m., *a Greek*

inquiet, they say, said

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*

Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*

Īlium, -iī, n., *Ilium (Troy)*

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*

validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy*

Trōianus, -i, m., *a Trojan*

nōndum (adv.), *not yet*

finitimus, -a, -um, *neighbouring, adjacent*

14C. Answer and/or translate

1. In the sentence <i>Puerī oppida obsident</i> state (a) Subject, case and number	
(b) Predicate and tense	1. (a) <i>Puerī</i> , nominative, pl. (7 51b)
(c) Is the verb transitive or intransitive?	1. (b) <i>obsident</i> , Present ind. (18 6 43a)
2. (a) How many syllables has <i>puer</i> in the nom. sing.?	1. (c) Transitive — takes an object <i>oppida</i> 17 V14
(b) Does <i>puer</i> increase or decrease in syllables when declined?	2. (a) Two: <i>pu-er</i> 51b
3. What similarity do you detect in the nom., voc. and acc. cases of neuter nouns?	2. (b) It increases: <i>pu-e-rum</i> 51b
4. Which other verb besides <i>rogō</i> takes a double accusative?	3. The nom., voc. and acc. of neuter nouns are alike in the sing. and alike in the pl. 51a
<i>Translate</i>	
5. Out of the town; to towns	4. <i>Ōceō</i> 47
6. We destroy the wall of the town.	5. <i>Ex oppidō; ad oppida</i> 48 51a 21 51a
7. I shall give the boy and girl a ship.	6. <i>Oppidī mūrū dēlēmus.</i> 26 51a 17 45a 43a
8. You (s.) will remain in the town.	7. <i>Puerō et puellae nāvigium</i> 30 51b 23a 30 31 17 51a <i>dābō.</i> 15
9. To the walls of the town.	8. <i>In oppidō manēbis.</i> 35 51a 43c
10. We attacked the island with ships.	9. <i>Ad oppidī mūrōs</i> 21 26 51a 21 45a

11. For many years.	10. Insulam nāvigiiis 17 19 36 51a oppugnāvimus. 24
	11. Multōs annōs 53 45a

14D. *Translate into Latin*

1. They never asked the assistance of the inhabitants of the town.
2. I often gave Marcus many spears and arrows.
3. The girls see (*videō*) the sons of the teacher on the ship.
4. Yesterday we ordered the boys to walk to the walls of the town.
5. The ships will soon sail from Troy.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 14D** (Card 32) and check your work.

14E. Write your own Latin sentence using one or more second declension neuter nouns in any cases.

UNIT 15

SECOND CONJUGATION VERBS

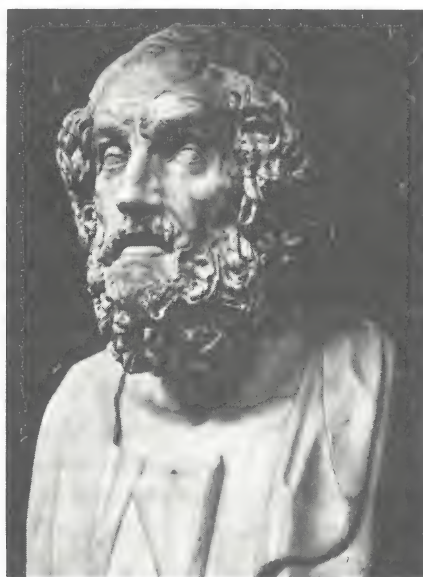
PERFECT STEM TENSES

* *Preparatory reading*

The Death of Patroclus

1. Homērus, Graecōrum poēta, librum dē bellō Trōiānō scripsit.	1. Homer, a Greek poet, wrote a book on (about) the Trojan War.
2. Achilles Pātrocium <i>monuit</i> ; Pātrocium pugnāre <i>prohibuit</i> .	2. Achilles warned Patroclus and forbade him to fight.
3. Achilles Pātrocium in tabernaculō manēre <i>iussit</i> .	3. Achilles ordered Patroclus to remain in the tent.
4. Achilles iram Graecōs nōn cēlāvit.	4. Achilles did not conceal his anger from the Greeks.
5. Dum Graecī Trōiam obsident, Trōi-ānī nāvigia <i>dēlēvērunt</i> .	5. While the Greeks besieged Troy, the Trojans destroyed the ships.
6. Achilles Hectoris corpus circum Trōiae mūrōs tractāvit.	6. Achilles dragged the body of Hector round the walls of Troy.

In the above frames **second conjugation verbs** have been used in the **Perfect** tense.



Homer, National Museum, Naples

— "Fot. Alinari"

SECOND CONJUGATION: E-VERBS

54 Indicative Mood

Perfect stem: monu-

Active

(a) PERFECT TENSE					
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English	
Sing. 1	monu-	-ī	monuī	Perfect	Aorist
				<i>I have advised</i>	<i>I advised</i>
				<i>I have been advising</i>	<i>I did advise</i>
2	monu-	-istī	monuistī	<i>You (s.) have advised</i>	<i>You (s.) advised</i>
3	monu-	-it	monuit	<i>He, she has advised</i>	<i>He, she advised</i>
Pl. 1	monu-	-imus	monuimus	<i>We have advised</i>	<i>We advised</i>
2	monu-	-istis	monuistis	<i>You (pl.) have advised</i>	<i>You (pl.) advised</i>
3	monu-	-ērunt	monuērunt or monuēre	<i>They have advised</i>	<i>They advised</i>

(b) PLUPERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	monu-	-eram	monueram	<i>I had advised, had been advising</i>
2	monu-	-erās	monuerās	<i>You (s.) had advised, etc.</i>
3	monu-	-erat	monuerat	<i>He, she had advised</i>
Pl. 1	monu-	-erāmus	monuerāmus	<i>We had advised</i>
2	monu-	-erātis	monuerātis	<i>You (pl.) had advised</i>
3	monu-	-erant	monuerant	<i>They had advised</i>

(c) FUTURE PERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	monu-	-erō	monuerō	<i>I shall have advised, shall have been advising</i>
2	monu-	-eris	monueris	<i>You (s.) will have advised, etc.</i>
3	monu-	-erit	monuerit	<i>He, she will have advised</i>
Pl. 1	monu-	-erimus	monuerimus	<i>We shall have advised</i>
2	monu-	-eritis	monueritis	<i>You (pl.) will have advised</i>
3	monu-	-erint	monuerint	<i>They will have advised</i>

Do the personal endings above correspond with others you have studied before?

Vocabulary 15

ira, -ae, f., anger

poēta, -ae, m., poet

clēmēntia, -ae, f., mercy, clemency

Trōia, -ae, f., Troy

liber, -brī, m., book

gladius, -iī, m., sword (voc. case: gladius)

dē (prep. + abl.), about, concerning

Trōiānus, -a, -um, Trojan

praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), show, offer

īlium, -iī, n., Ilium (Troy)

tabernāculum, -i, n., tent

Graecus, -i, m., a Greek

cēlō (1) + 2 acc., hide, conceal

tractō, (1), drag along, haul

circum (prep. + acc.), round, around

intereā (adv.), meanwhile

- 55** The position **dē**, *about*, is used with the **ablative** as in frame (1) above.
- 56** The preposition **circum**, *around*, *round* is used with the **accusative** as in frame (6) above. Note the position of *Trōiae* between *circum* and *mūrōs* to show its relation to the two words.
- 57** The conjunction **dum**, *while* is used with the **Present indicative** (even with reference to past time) if the duration of time expressed in the subordinate clause is longer than that in the principal clause, as in frame (5) above, i.e. when *while* has the meaning of *during the time that*.
- 58** **Cēlō** (1), *hide*, *conceal*, takes two accusatives. See frame (4) above.

15A. Drill

1. Conjugate *doceō*, *iubeō*, *rogō*, *dēleō* and *praebeō* in six indicative active tenses.
2. Decline fully in the sing. and pl.: *liber*, *poēta*, *tabernāculum*, *gladius*.
3. Give the principal parts of *obsideō*, *cēlō* and *fleō*.
4. Translate orally

<i>praebuerāmus</i>	<i>tractāveris</i>	<i>mānserātis</i>
<i>cēlābitis</i>	<i>iusserint</i>	<i>habuit</i>
<i>respondimus</i>	<i>risērunt</i>	<i>dē clēmēntiā</i>
<i>they had seen</i>	<i>we taught</i>	<i>you (s.) will have feared</i>

15B. Read and follow the instructions of Unit 14B

THE TROJAN WAR

2. The Death of Patroclus

Even the gods took sides in this war. Some supported the Greeks, while others favoured the Trojan cause.

● *Homērus*, Graecōrum poēta, librum dē bellō Trōiānō scripsit.

His story starts after the siege of Troy. The most important events in the tenth year of the war up to the death of Hector cover a period of four days only (according to the “Iliad”). Hector was the greatest hero of the Trojans.

● *Hector Priamī filius erat. Priamus Trōiae rēx erat.*

The main theme of the “Iliad” is the wrath of Achilles, one of the greatest heroes of the Greeks. Achilles was infuriated because Briseis, his slave girl, had been taken away from him by Agamemnon, the leader of the Greek host. In vain he tried to soothe Achilles, while on account of the latter’s aloofness the Greeks suffered continual defeat. Eventually, Patroclus, the friend of Achilles, could endure the idleness no longer and asked leave to engage in battle.

● *Achilles autem Pātrocum monuit; Pātrocum pugnāre prohibuit. Pātrocum in tabernāculō manēre iussit. Achilles intereā iram Graecōs nōn cēlāvit.*

Meanwhile the Trojans created havoc among the Greeks.

● *Pātrocus ‘Trōiāni’ respondit ‘multa nāvigia dēlēvērunt. Dum Trōiam obsidēmus, Trōiāni nāvigia dēlēvērunt. Clēmēntiam nōn praebeērunt. Pugnāre dēbēmus.’*

Eventually, Achilles gave way and allowed Patroclus to engage in battle.

Pātroclus nōn timuit. Trōiānōs oppugnāvit et terruit. Multōs Trōiānōs gladiō necāvit. Tandem Hector Pātroclum oppugnāvit et necāvit.

Achilles now blamed himself for the death of his friend and he was reconciled with Agamemnon. He resolved to avenge the death of Patroclus.

Achilles irātus erat, sed quoque flēvit. Achilles postquam Trōiānōs hastā et gladiō oppugnāvit, Hectorem *occidit*. Deinde Hectoris *corpus* circum Īli mūrōs tractāvit.

After Priamus had begged for the body of his son for a long time, Achilles allowed him to take it.

Achilles ubi Hectorem necāvit, *Penthesilēam* quoque occidit.

Penthesilea was the queen of the Amazons who supported the Trojans. The end of Achilles, however, was not far off. When he was an infant, his mother, Thetis, had dipped his whole body in the river Styx to make him invulnerable. The only vulnerable spot he had was the heel by which he was held when dipped in the Styx. Eventually, he was wounded in the heel by either Apollo or Paris and he died.

N.B. Where is your *Achilles tendon*?

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 15B** (Card 33) and check your work.



Greek vase in the National Museum of Naples showing the tomb of Patroclus surrounded by human figures paying tribute — “Fot. Alinari”

Reference vocabulary

Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer, a Greek epic poet*

scribō (3), *write*

Hector, -oris, m., *Hector, son of Priam, king of Troy*

Priamus, -ī, m., *Priam, king of Troy*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*

Achilles, -is, m., *Achilles, Greek hero, son of Peleus and Thetis*

Pātroclus, -ī, m., *Patroclus, friend of Achilles, slain by Hector*

occidō (3), *kill, slay*

corpus, -oris, n., *body*

Penthesilēa, -ae, f., *Penthesilea, queen of the Amazons*

15C. Answer and/or translate

1. Give the present and perfect stems of (a) doceō (b) cēlō	
2. In the sentence <i>Servī librōs viderant</i> state (a) Object, gender, number, case (b) Verb, tense, person	1. (a) docē-, docu- 43 54 (b) cēlā-, cēlāv- 2 24
3. Select the nouns from the following list: dē, gladius, tabernāculum, statim, habeō, poēta, dum, cēlō, filius, oppidum	2. (a) librōs, m., pl., acc. (17 18 45b) (b) viderant, Pluperfect ind., third person pl. (54b 6 V12)
4. Which nouns in frame (3) belong to the second declension?	3. gladius, tabernāculum, poēta (9 V15) filius, oppidum V13 V14
5. Name two other verbs besides <i>doceō</i> which take a double accusative.	4. gladius, tabernāculum 45a 51a filius oppidum 45a 51a
<i>Translate</i> 6. around the walls of Athens	5. cēlō and rogō 58 52
7. about (concerning) the boy's books	6. circum Athēnārū mūrōs 20 56 26 27 21 45a
8. He concealed the book from the boy.	7. dē puerī librīs 55 26 51b 45b
9. While I walked, I saw a Greek.	8. Librum puerum cēlāvit. 58 45b 58 51b 58 24

10. You (pl.) will have feared very much.	9. Dum ambulō, Graecum 23a 57 2 17 45a vidi. 54a
11. O sword! you have destroyed the town.	10. Maximē timueritis V2 54c
	11. Ō gladius! oppidum dēlēvistī. 12 65 17 51a 54a

15D. Translate into Latin

1. While I walked to the town, I saw (*videō*) a statue.
2. If you (pl.) destroy the walls, we shall conquer the inhabitants of Troy.
3. Because he had ordered Patroclus to stay in the tent, I attacked the Trojans.
4. You (s.) ought (perf.) to have besieged the island and I ought to have frightened the inhabitants.
(N.B. *Ought* is defective in English, because it lacks tenses. Consequently, *you ought to have besieged* = you “have ought” to besiege).
5. He taught the sons of Marcus sculpture in Rome.

**** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Unit 15D (Card 34) and check your work.**

- 15E. Write a Latin sentence using a second conjugation verb in one of the Perfect stem tenses.

UNIT 16

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

* Preparatory reading

The Wooden Horse of Troy

1. In which year did Ulysses suggest a good plan?	1. Ulixēs <i>decimō annō cōnsilium bonum dedit.</i>
2. What must they do?	2. Equum magnum et ligneum aedificāre dēbent.
3. With what did the Greeks fill the wooden horse?	3. Graecī equum ligneum virīs validis complēvērunt.
4. What did the remaining Greeks do?	4. Cēterī Graecī equum ligneum ad Trōiae portās tractāvērunt.
5. What will the Greeks never give the Trojans?	5. Graecī Trōiānīs bonum dōnum numquam dābunt.
6. To whom did they give the signal?	6. Cēterīs Graecīs signum dedērunt.
7. What had Laocoon seen?	7. Lāocoōn multa viderat.

In the above frames **adjectives** have been used **attributively** in various cases. Can you determine from frame (1) which case is used for expressing *time when* in Latin? See Rule 60.

59 ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

Vocabulary 16

complēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum (2) + abl., *fill up*; **mūrōs** *complēre*, *man the walls*; **nāvēs** *complēre*, *man the ships*
collocō (1), *place, lay, set, station*
animus, -i, m., *mind, feeling, intention*; **in animō habēre** + inf. *intend (have in mind)*

bonus, -a, -um, *good*
malus, -a, -um, *bad*
ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden, made of wood*
decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*
cēterī, -ae, -a, *the rest, remaining*

extrā (prep. + acc.), *outside, beyond*

equus, -ī, m., *horse*

to big towns

88

Graeci 'Cōnsilium' inquiunt 'bonum est.' Simulac *Epēios* equum ligneum *exaedificāvit*, Graeci equum viris validis complēvērunt. Cēteri Graeci equum ad Trōiae portās tractāvērunt et extrā mūrōs collocāvērunt. Deinde nāvigia complēvērunt et ad insulam *vīcīnam* nāvīgāvērunt.

Trōiānī 'Ecce!' inquiunt, 'Graeci ad patriam nāvīgāre in animō habent.'

Sinon, one of the Greeks, remained behind, pretending to have deserted. He told the Trojans that the Greeks had departed and that they had left the horse as a gift to the goddess Athene. If the Trojans were to take the horse inside their city gates, Troy would become impregnable.

Trōiānī *laetī erant*; equum ligneum in oppidum tractāvērunt.

Laocoon, a priest of Apollo, was very suspicious.

Lāocoōn Trōiānōs monuit. *Lāocoōn* 'Multa vidī' inquit. 'Bona vidī, mala vidī. Graeci Trōiānis bonum dōnum numquam dābunt; malum dōnum semper dābunt.'

The Trojans refused to heed his warning. Laocoon and his two sons were killed by poisonous snakes, while the armed Greeks inside the horse escaped under cover of darkness and opened the city gates.



*The Laocöon group,
Vatican Museum,
Rome*

— "Foto Brunner & C. Como"

Deinde cēteris Graecis *signum* dedērunt. Graeci Trōiam superāvērunt; multōs Trōiānōs *vulnerāvērunt*; multōs gladiis necāvērunt. Graeci Trōiam dēlēvērunt et Priamum *occidērunt*.

In this way Troy was taken by the Greeks. Aeneas, one of the Trojans, succeeded in escaping from the ruins of Troy with his family.

Ubi Graeci Trōiam dēlēvērunt, *Aenēas* et *pater* et *filius* ad *Ītaliā* nāvigiō nāvīgāvērunt.

N.B. Do you know the saying *Timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs*?

I fear the Greeks especially when bearing gifts.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 16B** (Card 35) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses or Odysseus, king of Ithaca, famous for his cunning and wanderings after the fall of Troy*

inquit, he, she says, said

inquiunt, they say, said

Epēios, -i, m., *Epeios, builder of the wooden horse*
exaedificō (1), *build, build up, erect*

vicinus, -a -um, *neighbouring, near, nearby*

ecce! (adv.), *behold! lo! see!*

Trōiānus, -i, m., *a Trojan*

laetus, -a, -um, *happy*

erant, they were (see sum)

Lāocoön, -ntis, m., *Lacoon, priest of Neptune in Troy*

signum, -i, n., *signal, sign*

occidō (3), *kill*

vulnerō (1), *wound*

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aeneas, mythical ancestor of the Romans*

pater, -tris, m., *father*

16C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which of the following words are adjectives? magna, bonum, porta, servus, parvus, complent, extrā, malus	
2. In which three respects does an adjective agree with the noun it qualifies?	1. magna, bonum, parvus, malus (38 59)
3. In the sentence <i>Vir multōs nautās vīdit</i> state (a) Subject, number, case	2. gender, number, case 40
(b) Object, gender, number, case	3. (a) Vir, sing., nom. (7 51b)
(c) Adjective, gender, number, case	3. (b) nautās, m., pl., acc. (17 18 19)
(d) Explain the gender of <i>multōs</i>	3. (c) multōs, m., pl., acc. (41a 38 59)
<i>Translate</i> 4. At Verona (city); in Italy	3. (d) Masculine because it agrees with <i>nautās</i> , a m. noun 40a
5. In the tenth year; for many years	4. Vērōnae; in Ītaliā 49 50a 35 37
6. Indicate the substantival use of the adjective by translating <i>I saw many men</i>	5. decimō annō; multōs annōs (60 41a) (53 41a)
7. Of bad gifts	6. Multōs vīdi. 61 54

8. We concealed the gifts from the boys.	7. dōnōrum malōrum 51a 59 40
9. With many big ships	8. Dōna puerōs cēlāvīmus. 51a 51b 58 24
	9. Nāvigiis multis et magnis 36 51a (40 61b 59)

16D. *Translate into Latin*

1. He ordered the rest of the men to man the walls immediately.
2. In the tenth year of the war the Greeks killed many Trojans with (their) swords.
3. I saw the sons of many Romans in the town.
4. The big ships of the pirates frightened the little girls very much.
5. The Romans gave Marcus a present, for Marcus had pacified Gaul.
6. We intend placing the wooden horse outside the walls of Troy.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 16D** (Card 36) and check your work.

16E. Write your own Latin sentence using an adjective in any case.

16F. Read a version of the “*Odyssey*” and the “*Iliad*” from the school library.

TEST 3

1. To whom did Paris give the golden apple?
2. Who was the most beautiful woman in the Greek world at that time?
3. Which friend of Achilles was killed by Hector?
4. Who suggested the plan of "the wooden horse?"
5. Who escaped from Troy with his family after the fall of the city?
6. Write the correct form of <i>bonus</i> , <i>-a</i> , <i>-um</i> in the sentence <i>Poētam — multa docui.</i>
7. Which case is used in Latin to denote (a) ³ Possession (b) Instrument by which (c) Time how long (d) Time when
8. (a) State the infinitive of <i>obsideō</i> . (b) Can the infinitive take an object?
<i>Translate</i>
9. We have asked the assistance of ten boys.
10. The masters ordered the slaves to remain in Athens.
11. Out of the town; out of Rome.
12. The Greeks used to teach many things.
13. You (pl.) will give the boys horses.
14. While we walked into the wood, we saw a man.
15. The Greeks attacked Troy, because Paris had carried off Helen.
16. If you (pl.) build a big horse, you will conquer Ilium.
17. He had told a story about the Trojan war.
18. For many years; in the tenth year.
19. We were destroying.
20. You (s.) had held.

**** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Test 3 (Card 37) and check your work.**

UNIT 17

THE STORY OF ROME 1

Extent of Rome

1 Ancient Rome was situated in Latium on the left bank of the Tiber about
2 14 miles from its mouth. The first settlement was made in 753 B.C. on the Pala-
3 tine Hill and formed the so-called *Rōma Quadrāta* (Square Rome) of Romulus.
The wall enclosed the *Capitol* (fortress) and *forum* (originally market-place).

2 Rapid expansion resulted in the enclosure of six more hills, viz. the Aven-
2 tine, Capitoline, Caelian, Esquiline, Viminal and Quirinal by the time of the king
Servius Tullius. This was the extent of the city in republican times, although
3 houses extended far beyond the *Servian Wall* (built by Servius Tullius).

3 Rome grew further in imperial times and a new wall was built by Aurelius
(270—275 A.D.) to include part of the right bank of the Tiber.

4 Various forums were built in the course of time, viz. the original forum,
the *Forum Jūlium*, the *Forum Augustum* and the *Forum Trāiānum*.

N.B. Your answer to each question can be checked by referring to the corres-
ponding numbers in the margin.

17.1 Where was Rome situated?

17.2 Give the names of the seven hills of Rome.

17.3 Name three walls of Rome.

17.4 Name three *forums* of Rome.



The Forum Romanum, Rome

— “Foto ENIT ROMA”

Legendary origin and regal period

- 5 Traditionally, Rome is of Trojan origin. The popular belief was that after
5 the fall of Troy (about 1184 B.C.), Aenēās escaped with a number of followers
5 and proceeded to Italy where he founded the city of Lavinium. His son, Ascanius
or Julius, founded Alba Longa which became the seat of a line of Alban kings.

The last of the Alban kings was Numitor whose throne was usurped by his brother, Amulius. The latter made Numitor's daughter, Rhea Silvia, a Vestal virgin in order to prevent her marriage and the possibility of a rightful heir to the throne. But by Mars, the god of war, Rhea Silvia became the mother of twin sons, Romulus and Remus, who were saved from the wrath of Amulius and slew him when they had grown up. They restored the kingdom to Numitor.

Romulus then founded Rome (753 B.C.). He increased the city's population by inviting the neighbouring Sabines to his games and then ordering his men to carry off the Sabine women as their wives. The war that followed came to an end when the Sabine women declared their desire to stay in Rome. Many Sabines and Latins migrated to Rome and assisted in the development of the city.

- 6 The reign of Romulus ended when he suddenly disappeared in a thunderstorm. There was also a rumour that he was killed by his councillors. After Romulus, tradition holds that Rome was ruled over by six kings, viz.
- 6 (a) **Numa Pompilius**, regarded as the founder of the state religion;
- 6 (b) **Tullus Hostilius** who incorporated Alba Longa by the victory of Horatius over the Curiatii brothers;
- 6 (c) **Ancus Marcius** who strengthened the fortifications of Rome, built the first bridge over the Tiber and founded a colony at Ostia at the mouth of the Tiber;
- 6 (d) **Lucius Tarquinius Priscus** (616—579 B.C.) who extended his sway over Latium and carried out a public works programme, viz. the building of the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill and the *Circus Maximus* for games and races. He also built sewers for draining the city area and increased the number of senators by 100.
- 6 (e) **Servius Tullius** whose reign ended in 535 B.C. He introduced several internal reforms and built the great wall which enclosed all seven hills.
- 6 (f) **Lucius Tarquinius Superbus** who murdered Servius Tullius whose son-in-law he was. His reign was characterised by violence and cruelty at home. Abroad he gained possession of the Latin city of Gabii. Superbus proved to be a hateful tyrant, and when his son, Sextus, perpetrated an outrage, Brutus aroused the people to expel the king and his family. This happened in 509 B.C. after which Rome became a republic.
- 7
- 8 Thereafter two *consuls* were elected annually to exercise supreme authority, but whenever Rome was threatened by invasion or defeat, a *dictator* was appointed to meet the crisis.

17.5 What is meant by *the Trojan origin of Rome*?

17.6 Name the seven kings of Rome before the republic.

17.7 What form of government was introduced after the expulsion of the kings?

17.8 Which officials exercised supreme control under the new form of government?



The wall of Aurelius near St. Paul's door, Rome

— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

Facts on the founding of Rome

- 9 The total absence of written documents compiled between 753 and 509 B.C. prevented the compilation of an accurate account on this period. Very little was written during the reign of the kings. The records which did exist were either destroyed during the sack of Rome by the Gauls in 390 B.C. or disappeared in some other way.

- By 200 B.C. the historians Pictor and Alimenthus and the poets Naevius and Ennius had recorded the traditional stories on the founding of Rome.
- 9 No scientific research had been undertaken by Livius and Dionysius, and, consequently, only the most creditable stories were retold. Thus archeological excavations became the main source of information for the accurate reconstruction of the history of the period concerned. Nevertheless, mingled with tradition, a certain element of historical fact is recognised, e.g. aspects of the reign of the later kings.

Modern writers regard *the Trojan origin of Rome* as a fable, but the tradition that it was founded by the Latins of Alba Longa is acceptable. The similarity of archeological findings in Rome and Alba supports this theory. Moreover, there existed a distinct similarity between the Romans and their Latin neighbours with regard to language and institutions.

- 10 The Latins, it can be accepted, founded the colony on the banks of the
- 10 Tiber to create a defence barrier against the Etruscans, at that time the most powerful Italian tribe.

- The new city grew in strength as a result of the fusion of immigrants of the various neighbouring tribes, amongst others Sabines and Etruscans. The three
- 11 principal Roman tribes, viz. the *Ramnēs*, *Titiēs* and *Lūcerēs* were of Etruscan origin, as well as the kings from Tarquinius Priscus to Superbus.

17.9 Why do we discredit *the Trojan origin of Rome*?

17.10 Which tribe founded Rome and why?

17.11 Name the three original Roman tribes and state their origin.



Capitoline Venus in
the Capitoline Museum,
Rome

— "Fot. Alinari"

Struggle of the orders

From the regal period Rome was divided by internal strife which impeded
12 its progress. Two separate orders developed, viz. the *patriciī* and the *plēbēī*.
The patricians were the *patrēs*, members of the original tribes and their descen-
dants who owned the land. The plebeians were the *clientēs* (clients) of the patri-
cians, foreign immigrants and members of conquered tribes. The patricians were
rich and they governed the city. The plebeians were poor, did all the work and
had no political rights.

When Rome became a republic in 509 B.C. the plebeians had various grievan-
13 ces. The laws were not known to them, because they were not available in
13 written form. They could not hold public or religious offices; their voting
13 rights were of little value in the *Comitia Centuriāta*, as the patricians were in the
13 majority in the council; they claimed the right of inter-marriage with the patri-
13 cians; they demanded just laws against debt and bankruptcy and a share of
the crown lands possessed by the patricians.

Between 471 and 287 B.C. various laws were made to improve the lot of the
16 plebeians, after they had threatened on two occasions to withdraw to the Sacred
16 Mountain and leave the patricians to do their own work. They gained their
rights as follows:

471 B.C.: The *Concilium Plebis* (Council of the Plebeians) was officially recog-
nised (but not its power to make laws).

15 450 B.C.: The *Twelve Tables* were drawn up in such a way that everybody
could read and understand the law.

- 15 445 B.C.: The right of inter-marriage with patricians was recognised.
- 15 400 B.C.: *Military tribunes* were elected to promote the interests of the plebeians.
- 15 367 B.C.: The extent of crown lands in possession of a single citizen was limited to 300 acres. The two consuls would be *elected* from this date and one of them had to be a plebeian.
- 15 367—337 B.C.: All public offices like *dictātor*, *censor*, *praetor*, etc., could be held by plebeians.
- 15 300 B.C.: Plebeians were admitted to religious offices like *augur* and *pontifex*.
- 14 287 B.C.: The *Hortensian Laws* granted legal power to the decrees of the *Concilium Plebis*.

This concluded the struggle between the patricians and the plebeians, the latter now having gained equal powers and rights with the patricians. It is remarkable that no violence was perpetrated and no blood was shed in the process. Unity at home, moreover, ensured greater strength abroad.

- 17.12 Which two orders existed in Rome since the regal period? Do you know their Latin names?
- 17.13 Name three grievances of the plebeians.
- 17.14 When was the struggle concluded?
- 17.15 Name some concessions gained by the plebeians.
- 17.16 Why were the patricians forced to make these concessions?

UNIT 18

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS: PRESENT STEM TENSES

* *Preparatory reading*

The Escape of Aeneas

1. <i>Nunc fābulam legent.</i>	1. They will now read a story.
2. <i>Vergilius librum scribit.</i>	2. Vergil writes a book.
3. <i>Iuppiter Aeneān discēdere iussit.</i>	3. Jupiter ordered Aeneas to depart. (Which case is <i>Aeneān</i> ? Control with 66).
4. <i>Aenēās bellum contrā Rutulōs gerit.</i>	4. Aeneas wages war against the Rutuli.
5. <i>Aenēās et amīcī Rutulōs vincent.</i>	5. Aeneas and his friends will conquer the Rutuli.
6. <i>Aenēās oppidum condit.</i>	6. Aeneas founds a town.
7. <i>Oppidum Lāvīnium appellat.</i>	7. He names the town Lavinium.

In the above frames **third conjugation verbs** have been used.

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS: PRESENT STEM TENSES

62

Indicative Mood

Present stem: **reg-**

Active

(a) PRESENT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ō</i>	regō	<i>I rule, am ruling, do rule</i>
2	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-is</i>	regis	<i>You (s.) rule, are ruling, do rule</i>
3	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-it</i>	regit	<i>He, she rules, is ruling, does rule</i>
Pl. 1	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-imus</i>	regimus	<i>We rule, are ruling, do rule</i>
2	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-itis</i>	regitis	<i>You (pl.) rule, are ruling, do rule</i>
3	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-unt</i>	regunt	<i>They rule, are ruling, do rule</i>

(b) IMPERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbam</i>	regēbam	<i>I was ruling, used to rule</i>
2	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbās</i>	regēbās	<i>You (s.) were ruling, etc.</i>
3	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbat</i>	regēbat	<i>He, she was ruling</i>
Pl. 1	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbāmus</i>	regēbāmus	<i>We were ruling</i>
2	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbātis</i>	regēbātis	<i>You (pl.) were ruling</i>
3	<i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēbant</i>	regēbant	<i>They were ruling</i>

(c) FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing.	1 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-am</i>	regam	<i>I shall rule, shall be ruling</i>
	2 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	regēs	<i>You (s.) will rule, etc.</i>
	3 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-et</i>	reget	<i>He, she will rule</i>
Pl.	1 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-ēmus</i>	regēmus	<i>We shall rule</i>
	2 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-ētis</i>	regētis	<i>You (pl.) will rule</i>
	3 <i>reg-</i>	<i>-ent</i>	regent	<i>They will rule</i>

Determine from the above table in which respects the Future Simple inflexions of the Third Conjugation differ from those of the First and Second Conjugations.



The Tiber personified, Louvre

— Photo by permission “Musée du Louvre”

- 63** Verbs having their present stem in a *consonant* or *u* belong to the third conjugation, e.g. *dūc-ō*, *mitt-ō*, *scrib-ō*, *relinqu-ō*.
- 64** (a) Second declension personal names in *-ius* (like *Claudius*) and *filius* have their vocative singular in *-ī*, viz. *Claudī*, *fīlī* (*ie* contracting to *ī*).
 (b) Personal names in *-ius* also drop the second *ī* in the genitive, e.g. *Claudī*, of *Claudius*, while *filius* has both *fīlī* and *fīlii* in the gen. sing.
- 65** The vocative sing. of nouns in *-ius*, like *nuntius*, *gladius* and *socius*, does not differ from the nominative sing.
- 66** *Aenēās*, a Greek personal name, is **declined** as follows:
- | | | | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> | Aenēās | <i>Voc.</i> | Aeneā | <i>Acc.</i> | Aeneān |
| <i>Gen.</i> | Aeneae | <i>Dat.</i> | Aeneae | <i>Abl.</i> | Aeneā |
- 67** *Dīcō* (like *dō*) takes an *indirect object* in the *dative*, e.g.
Marcō multa dīcam. *I shall say many things to Marcus.*

Vocabulary 18

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum (3), *rule, govern, direct*
 dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum (3), *say, tell*
 dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum (3), *lead*
 vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum (3), *conquer, defeat*
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum (3), *read*
 scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum (3), *write*
 occidō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum (3), *kill, slay*
 hīc (adv.), *here*
 postea (adv.), *afterwards*

dēfendō, -ere, -dī, -sum (3), *defend*
 relinqūō, -ere reliquī, relictum (3), *leave, abandon*
 victōria, -ae, f., *victory*
 socius, -ii; m., *ally*
 nunc (adv.), *now* (used with present and future tenses)
 iam (adv.), *now, already* (used with imperfect and past tenses)

18A. Drill

1. Conjugate in the three present stem tenses: *dīcō, vincō, aedificō, relinqūō, compleō*.
2. Decline fully in the sing.: *Claudius, victōria, socius*.
3. Decline together in the plural: *socius novus, bellum novum*.
4. Give the principal parts of *dūcō, vincō, doceō* and *scribō*.
5. Translate orally:

<i>statim dīcam</i>	<i>numquam scribis</i>	<i>dūcēbant</i>
<i>relinquunt</i>	<i>semper vincit</i>	<i>mox dūcēmus</i>
<i>oppidum dēfendent</i>	<i>oppidum obsident</i>	<i>patriam regunt.</i>
<i>I shall defend</i>	<i>he writes</i>	<i>you (s.) will read</i>

18B. Read and follow the instructions of Unit 14B.

AENEAS ESCAPES FROM TROY

It was traditionally believed that Rome was founded as a result of the flight of Aeneas from Troy. In Vergil's epic, the *Aeneid*, the flight of Aeneas is the main theme and the influence of Homer's *Iliad* and *Odyssey* is evident.

It was generally accepted that Aeneas was of royal descent. On various occasions his life was saved in battles during the Trojan war by Aphrodite (his alleged mother) and Apollo.

Vergilius librum dē Aeneā scribit. Nunc fābulam legēmus.

Postquam Graeci Trōiānōs superāvērunt, Aenēas et *pater* et filius parvus et amīci Trōiam reliquērunt. *Anchīsēs* Aeneae pater erat. *Ascanius* Aeneae filius erat.

Having taken refuge in the vicinity of Mount Ida for some time, they crossed over to Thrace. Initially, Aeneas's wife was included in the party, but she disappeared in some inexplicable way.

Aenēas et amīci multa nāvigia hīc exaedificāvērunt.

From this point they proceeded southwards in twenty ships and eventually reached Carthage. Here, according to Vergil, Aeneas became infatuated with the charming queen, Dido.

Aenēas Trōiae fābulam et Graecōrum victōriam nārrat. *Iuppiter* autem Aeneā ex *Āfricā discēdere* iussit. *Iuppiter* 'Ad *Ītaliā* nāvīgāre dēbes' Aeneae dicit.



Jupiter, Archeological Museum, Venice

— Photo by permission “Museo Archeologico Venezia”

Disappointed by the sudden departure of Aeneas, Dido cursed him and his followers and took her own life.

• Aenēās amicōs atque sociōs ad Ītalīae ōram dūcit.

They reached the mouth of the Tiber and went ashore in Latium where Latinus was the king. *Lavinia*, his daughter, was courted by *Turnus*, king of the Rutuli. Latinus had been commanded by the gods to give his daughter in marriage to a foreigner who would arrive in his territory. Thus Aeneas married Lavinia. Turnus, greatly infuriated by these developments, called upon his allies for assistance in driving the Trojan intruder away.

• Itaque Aenēās et sociī bellum *contrā* Rutulōs *gerunt*. Aenēās ‘Si fortiter pugnābimus,’ sociīs dicit ‘*Rutulōs* vincēmus.’ Incolae autem terram fortiter dēfendunt.

The struggle proved to be of long duration. Aeneas concluded a treaty with the Etruscans who assisted him against his enemies. The war ended in a duel between Aeneas and Turnus.

• Aenēās *Turnum* vincit et gladiō occidit. Postea Aenēās et sociī oppidum *novum* *condunt*. Oppidum *Lāvinium* *appellant*. *Lāvinium* erat in *Latiō*.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 18B (Card 38) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Vergilius, -ī, m., *Vergil, celebrated Roman poet*

Aenēās, -ae, m., *Aeneas, mythical ancestor of the Romans*

pater, -tris, m., *father*

Anchisēs, -ae, m., *Anchises, father of Aeneas*

Ascānius, -ī, m., *Ascanius, son of Aeneas*

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, father of the gods in Rome*

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa*

discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessum (3), *depart, go away*

Turnus, -ī, m., *Turnus, king of the Rutuli, killed by Aeneas*

Rutulī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Rutuli, an ancient tribe of Latium whose capital was Ardea*

rēx, rēgis, m., *king*

contrā (prep. + acc.), *against*

gerō (3) + bellum, *wage war, carry on war*

Lāvinia, -ae, f., *Lavinia, second wife of Aeneas*

Lāvinium, -iī, n., *Lavinium, town founded by Aeneas and named after his wife*

novus, -a, -um, *new*

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (3), *to found, establish*

appellō, (1), *call, name*

Latium, -iī, n., *Latium*

18C. Answer and/or translate

1. Which Roman poet wrote the <i>Aeneid</i> ?	
2. Against which tribe did Aeneas fight a war?	1. Vergil (<i>Vergilius</i>) U 18B
3. After whom did Aeneas name his town <i>Lāvīnium</i> ?	2. The <i>Rutulī</i> under Turnus U 18B
4. Give the present stem of <i>vincō</i> , <i>dēleō</i> , <i>liberō</i> .	3. After his wife, <i>Lāvīnia</i> U 18B
5. In the sentence <i>Virī multōs librōs scribent</i> state (a) Subject, number, case	4. vinc-, dēlē-, liberā- 63 43 2
(b) Verb, tense, person	5. (a) Virī, plural, nominative (7 51b)
6. Which part of speech is <i>posteā</i> ? (a) Verb (b) Noun (c) Adverb	5. (b) <i>scribent</i> , Future Simple, third person plural 62c
<i>Translate</i>	
7. O son! O messenger! O Cornelius!	6. (c) Adverb V18
8. You (pl.) were already conquering (<i>vincō</i>) the sons of Fabius.	7. Ō fili! Ō nuntius! Ō Corneli! 64a 65 64a
9. While you (s.) write, I shall read.	8. Fabī filiōs iam vincēbātis. 64b 17 V18 62b
10. The Greeks do not kill (<i>occidō</i>) Aeneas in Troy.	9. D u m scribēs, l e g a m. 44 62c 62c
11. Marcus says many things to Claudius.	10. Graeci Aeneān Trōiae nōn 7 45a 17 66 50a 14 occidunt. 6 62a
12. The allies will defend the walls of the big town.	11. Marcus Claudiō multa dicit. 7 45a 67 45a 61a 62a

13. We are reading Vergil's book about Troy.	12. Socii oppidī magnī mūrōs 7 45a 26 51a 40 59 17 45a dēfendunt. 6 62c
	13. Vergilī librum dē Trōiā 64b 17 45b 55 37 legimus. 62a

18D. *Translate into Latin*

1. We shall read Vergil's book, but we shall not read the slaves' books.
2. While you (pl.) were defending the gates of the town, Marcus was plundering the island.
3. The Romans lead (their) allies into the vast forests of the Gauls.
4. When you (s.) conquer (*vincō*) Italy, I shall write a book about the war.
5. The teacher says many things to the boys and the girls.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 18D** (Card 39) and check your work.

18E. Write your own Latin sentence using a third conjugation verb in any present stem tense.

18F. Read outside teaching time in *Appendix A*:

1. **An extract from Livy.**
2. **Who was Publius Vergilius Maro?**

UNIT 19

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS

PERFECT STEM TENSES

* *Preparatory reading*

The Founding of Rome

1. <i>Rōmulus et Remus Amūlium expulērunt.</i>	1. Romulus and Remus drove Amulius out.
2. <i>Remus caelum a Palātiō adspexit.</i>	2. Remus watched the sky from the Palatine Hill.
3. <i>Deī duodecim avēs ad Rōmulum mīsērunt.</i>	3. The gods sent Romulus twelve birds.
4. <i>Rōmulus urbem novam exaedicāre incēpit.</i>	4. Romulus began to build a new city.
5. <i>Rōmulus Remum occīdit.</i>	5. Romulus killed Remus.

In the above frames **third conjugation verbs** have been used in the **Perfect indicative active**.

THIRD CONJUGATION VERBS: PERFECT STEM TENSES

68

Indicative Mood

Perfect stem: **rēx-**

Active

(a) PERFECT TENSE					
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English	
Sing. 1 2 3	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>rēxī</i>	Perfect <i>I have ruled</i>	Aorist <i>I ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-istī</i>	<i>rēxistī</i>	<i>You (s.) have ruled</i>	<i>You (s.) ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-it</i>	<i>rēxit</i>	<i>He, she has ruled</i>	<i>He, she ruled</i>
Pl. 1 2 3	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-imus</i>	<i>rēximus</i>	<i>We have ruled</i>	<i>We ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-istis</i>	<i>rēxistis</i>	<i>You (pl.) have ruled</i>	<i>You (pl.) ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-ērunt</i>	<i>rēxērunt</i> or <i>rēxere</i>	<i>They have ruled</i>	<i>They ruled</i>

(b) PLUPERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1 2 3	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-eram</i>	<i>rēxeram</i>	<i>I had ruled, I had been ruling</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erās</i>	<i>rēxerās</i>	<i>You (s.) had ruled, had been ruling</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erat</i>	<i>rēxerat</i>	<i>He, she had ruled, had been ruling</i>
Pl. 1 2 3	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>	<i>rēxerāmus</i>	<i>We had ruled, had been ruling</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erātis</i>	<i>rēxerātis</i>	<i>You (pl.) had ruled, had been ruling</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erant</i>	<i>rēxerant</i>	<i>They had ruled, had been ruling</i>

(c) FUTURE PERFECT TENSE				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erō</i>	<i>rēxerō</i>	<i>I shall have ruled, shall have been ruling</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-eris</i>	<i>rēxeris</i>	<i>You (s.) will have ruled, etc.</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erit</i>	<i>rēxerit</i>	<i>He, she will have ruled</i>
Pl. 1	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erimus</i>	<i>rēxerimus</i>	<i>We shall have ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-eritis</i>	<i>rēxeritis</i>	<i>You (pl.) will have ruled</i>
	<i>rēx-</i>	<i>-erint</i>	<i>rēxerint</i>	<i>They will have ruled</i>

69 Certain *-iō* verbs belong to the third conjugation, e.g. *incipiō*, *adspiciō*, *capiō*.

70 The declension of *deus*, (*a god*) is irregular and is dealt with in *Book 2*.

Vocabulary 19

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum (3), *expel, drive out*

discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (3), *depart, go away*

adspiciō (*aspiciō*), -ere, -spexī, -spectum (3),

look at, watch

incipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3) + inf., *begin,*

commence

mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum (3), *send*

condō, -ere, -didi, -ditum (3), *to found, establish*

appellō (1), *call, name*

lupa, -ea, f., *she-wolf*

caelum, -ī, n., *sky, heavens*

deus, *dei*, m., *god* (declension irregular)

novus, -a, -um, *new*

ā, *ab* (prep. + abl.), *by, from, away from* (generally *ab* before vowels and *h, j, d, l, n, r, s*)

duo, *duae*, *duo*, *two*

sex, *six*

post (prep. + acc.), *after, behind*

bis, *twice*

19A. Drill

1. Conjugate *mitto*, *dīcō*, *appellō*, *dūcō* and *terreō* in six indicative active tenses.
2. Decline fully in the sing.: *caelum*, *lupa*, *Rōmulus*.
3. Decline fully in the pl.: *vir*, *gladius*, *cōnsilium*.
4. Give the principal parts of *mittō*, *discēdō* and *appellō*.
5. Translate orally

expellēmus

mīsistī

adspexerātis

I have sent

discesserat

discēdam

mīsīt

we had led

scribere incēpimus

oppidum condidit

post oppidī mūrōs

they said



The Capitoline She-wolf, Capitoline Museum, Rome

— "Foto Brunner & C. Como"

19B. Read, following the instructions of Unit 14B

THE FOUNDING OF ROME BY ROMULUS

A few years after the founding of Lavinium Aeneas died. His son, Ascanius, founded a new town which he called *Alba Longa*. Livius *Ab Urbe Condita Liber 1*: 'Is Ascanius . . . novam ipse aliam sub Albano monte condidit, quae . . . Longa Alba appellata.' After Ascanius various kings reigned over Alba Longa. One of these had two sons, viz. Numitor and Amulius. Numitor was the rightful successor, but his throne was usurped by Amulius who killed the sons of his brother.

We have already seen in Unit 17 how Amulius maltreated *Numitor's* daughter, *Rhea Silvia*, who later gave birth to twin boys fathered by Mars, the god of war.

●●● *Amūlius Silviae* duōs filiōs occidere in animō habuit. Filii parvī erant *Rōmulus* et *Remus*.

Amulius ordered that Romulus and Remus should be committed to the river *Tiber*. They were placed in a basket on the water, and they drifted downstream. The basket was eventually washed ashore at a place where Rome was to be founded later.

●● Lupa Rōmulum Remumque servāvit et cūrāvit.

Faustulus, a herdsman, found the two boys on the river bank and took them home where they were cared for by his wife, *Acca Larentia*.

●●●●● Post multōs annōs puerī et *Albae Longae* incolae Amūlium vicērunt. Rōmulus Remusque postquam Amūlium expulērunt et occidērunt, Alba Longa discessērunt.

Having restored Numitor to the throne of Alba Longa, Romulus and Remus decided to found their own city. However, they could not agree on its site. Eventually, they decided to subject their difference to the will of the gods. They would each ascend a different hill, and the one to whom the gods sent the most birds to see would determine the site of the city and its name.

●●●●● Itaque Rōmulus caelum ab *Aventīnō* adspexit. Remus caelum a *Palātiō* spectāvit. Deī ad Remum sex avēs misērunt; ad Rōmulum bis sex (*id est duodecim*) misērunt. Itaque Rōmulus urbem novam exaedificāre incēpit.

Rōmulus mūrōs aedificāvit. Mūrī nōn erant altī. Rōmulus diū labōrāvit.

Thereupon Remus jeered at his brother's attempts to build a city, and, to show his contempt for the work, he jumped over the newly-built walls.

●●●●● Remus quoque risit, quod mūrī nōn erant altī. Rōmulus maximē irātus erat. Quod Remus riserat, Rōmulus Remum occidit. Rōmulus urbem condidit et Rōmam appellāvit.

In this way Rome was named after its founder. The Roman era dates from the founding of Rome (*Ab Urbe Condita*) in 753 B.C.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 19B (Card 40) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius, king of Alba Longa*

Rhēa Silvia, Rheae Silviae, f., *Rhea Silvia, daughter of Numitor and mother of Romulus and Remus*

Numitor: *king of Alba Longa*

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus, founder and first king of Rome*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus, brother of Romulus*

servō (1), *save*

cūrō (1), *care for, look after*

Tiberis, -is, m., *the river Tiber*

Faustulus, -ī, m., *the herdsman who found Romulus and Remus and brought them up*

Acca Lārentia: *wife of Faustulus*

Alba Longa: *Latin town built by Ascanius*

Aventinus, -ī, m., *the Aventine, one of the hills of Rome*

Palātium, -īī, n., *the Palatine Hill*

avēs: *acc. pl. of avis, -is, f., bird*

id est, *that is*

duodecim, *twelve*

urbem: *acc. sing. of urbs, -is, f., city*



A bridge over the Tiber near the Castle of St. Angelo, Rome

—“Foto ENIT ROMA”

19C. Answer and/or translate

1. The Romans had a festival called the <i>Lārentālia</i> . Can you determine the derivation of the name?	
2. What were the <i>Palātium</i> and the <i>Aventine</i> ? (a) Rivers (b) Hills (c) Oceans	1. From <i>Acca Lārentia</i> , the herdsman's wife who brought up Romulus and Remus. U 19B
3. What does <i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> mean?	2. Hills of Rome (b) U 19B

4. Give the perfect stem of <i>mittō</i> , <i>pugnō</i> , <i>respondeō</i> .	3. From (since) the founding of the city (<i>Rome</i>), i.e. 753 B.C. U 19B
5. From the sentence <i>Sociōs servōs mittere iussimus</i> state (a) Object of the main verb. (b) Object of the infinitive.	4. <i>mīs-</i> , <i>pugnāv-</i> , <i>respond-</i> 68 24 54
6. Why can't <i>sociōs</i> be the object of <i>mittere</i> in frame (5)	5. (a) <i>sociōs</i> 17 (b) <i>servōs</i> 46b
<i>Translate</i> 7. Of a new ally; of a new gate	6. (i) There is little sense in saying <i>We ordered the slaves to send allies</i> . (ii) The proximity of <i>servos</i> and <i>mittere</i> shows their relation to each other. U 13(4)
8. At Lavinium; from Lavinium	7. <i>sociī novī; portae novae</i> 26 45a 40 59 26 27 40 59
9. While they attacked, we sent a messenger.	8. <i>Lāvīnīi; Lāvīniō</i> 50a 49
10. After many years	9. <i>Dum oppugnant, nuntium</i> 57 57 2 17 45a <i>mīsimus.</i> 68a
11. To the walls of Rome	10. <i>Post multōs annōs</i> 21 40 41a 21 45a
12. They had already sent many gifts to Marcus.	11. <i>A d Rōmae mūrōs</i> 21 26 27 21 45a
13. If they depart, we shall not conquer (<i>vincō</i>).	12. <i>I a m multa dōna ad</i> V18 41a 17 51a 21 <i>Marcum mīserant.</i> 21 45a 68b 6
	13. <i>Sī discesserint, nōn</i> 34 68c 34 14 <i>vincēmus.</i> 62c

19D. *Translate into Latin*

1. After many years the inhabitants of the island began to send beautiful gifts to the Romans.
 2. As soon as he departs from the town, we shall send the allies to Romulus.
 3. The slaves, however, did not watch (*adspiciō*) the sky and the shore.
 4. We defended (our) fatherland bravely, but Claudius conquered (*vincō*) many towns.
 5. We have read Vergil's book; he wrote the book about the Trojan war.
- ** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 19D** (Card 41) and check your work.

19E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a third conjugation verb used in any perfect stem tense.

19F. Read outside teaching time in *Appendix A*:

3. **Who was Titus Livius?**

UNIT 20

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

EGO AND NOS TU AND VOS

* *Preparatory reading*

Abducting the Sabine Women

1. <i>Vōs Rōmam venīre dēbētis.</i>	1. You (pl.) ought to come to Rome.
2. <i>Nōs vōbīs auxilium dābimus.</i>	2. We shall render you (pl.) assistance.
3. <i>Ego cōsiliū bonum cēpī.</i>	3. I devised a good plan.
4. <i>Tū consiliū bonum cēpistī.</i>	4. You (s.) devised a good plan.
5. <i>Nōs nūntiōs ad Rōmulum Rōmam mittēmus.</i>	5. We shall send messengers to Romulus in Rome.

Why not *Rōmae* in frame (5)? Compare **Rule 75**.

In the above frames the personal pronouns **ego**, *I*, **nōs**, *we*, **tū**, *you (s.)*, and **vōs**, *you (pl.)* have been used.

71 PERSONAL PRONOUNS: DECLENSION OF EGO, NOS, TU, VOS

First Person			Second Person	
Case	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	ego <i>I</i>	nōs <i>we</i>	tū <i>you (s.)</i>	vōs <i>you (pl.)</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	tū <i>O you</i>	vōs <i>O you</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	mē <i>me</i>	nōs <i>us</i>	tē <i>you</i>	vōs <i>you</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	meī <i>of me</i>	nostrī or <i>of us</i> nostrum	tuī <i>of you</i>	vestrī or <i>of you</i> vestrum
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi <i>to, for me</i>	nōbīs <i>to, for us</i>	tibi <i>to, for you</i>	vōbīs <i>to, for you</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	mē <i>by, with, from me</i>	nōbīs <i>by, with, from us</i>	tē <i>by, with, from you</i>	vōbīs <i>by, with, from you</i>

N.B. To translate, *of us (our)* and *of you pl. (your)* use **nostrī** and **vestrī** respectively.
Nostrum and **vestrum** are explained in **Book 2**.

72 Personal pronouns are used in Latin when they are *emphasised* or when they appear before a *vocative*, e.g.

Vōs, amicī, dābitis. *You, friends, will give.*

- 73** The personal ending of the verb (**inflexion**) must agree with the pronoun (if expressed as the subject of the sentence), as in the above frames.
- 74** As in English, compound subjects agree with the verb as follows:
- You (s.) and I (= we) conquer. Ego et tū vincimus.*
 - Marcus and I (= we) conquer. Ego et Marcus vincimus.*
 - You (s.) and Marcus (= you pl.) conquer. Tū et Marcus vincitis.*
- 75** The Romans felt *mōtion* towards more strongly than *position in* in a sentence like *I send a slave to Romulus in Rome*. They said

Servum ad Rōmulum Rōmam mittō.

Vocabulary 20

ego, pers. pronoun, *I*
nōs, pers. pronoun, *we*
tū, pers. pronoun, *you (s.)*
vōs, pers. pronoun, *you (pl.)*
abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (3), *carry off*
rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum (3), *seize, snatch*
 (people)
capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (3), *take, seize; cōnsilium*
capere, make a plan, devise a scheme

nūntiō (1), *announce, report*
invitō (1), *invite*
proelium, -iī, n., *battle; proelium committō, -ere,
 -misi, -misum (3), *engage in battle*
nūntius, -iī, m., *messenger*
signum, -i, n., *signal*
spectāculum, -i, n., *spectacle*
lūdus, -i, m., *game, school*
per (prep. + acc.), *through**

20A. Drill

- Decline fully: *ego, nōs, tū, vōs*
- Decline in the sing. and pl.: *lūdus, signum, fēmina*.
- Give the principal parts of *abdūcō, nūntiō, discēdō* and *videō*.
- Fill in the missing pronoun (as subject) and translate orally:

..... mittēmus bellum gerebātis
..... nūntiāvī proelium commisistī
..... rapuistī oppidum cēperāmus
<i>ego et</i> <i>vīcimus</i>	<i>tū et</i> <i>adiuvāre dēbētis</i>
- Translate orally, expressing the pronouns:

you (pl.) expel us
we shall send you (s.)
I gave you (pl.) books
You (sing.) lead me.



*“The Rape of the Sabines” by Giambologna
in the Orcagna Lodge, Florence*

THE SABINE WOMEN ARE ABDUCTED

In order to stimulate the growth of Rome after its founding, Romulus invited (*invītō*) all exiles from the neighbouring tribes to settle in the new city. So many foreigners availed themselves of this invitation that the population increased rapidly. The new arrivals, however, had no wives (*uxōrēs*). The shortage of women could seriously retard the growth of the city. Negotiations with neighbouring tribes (*nā-tiōnēs vicinās*) proved fruitless.

Rōmulus 'Ego' inquit 'cōnsilium bonum cēpī. Nōs spectāculum magnum Rōmae nūntiābimus et *Sabinōs* per nūntiōs ad lūdōs invītābimus. Multī virī Sabīnī et *fēminae* et puellae et puerī Rōmam *venient*. Ubi Sabīnī venerint, vōs *virginēs Sabīnās* rapere dēbēbitis.'

Rōmānī 'Tū cōnsilium bonum cēpisti' Rōmulo dīxērunt.

The plan was executed and many Sabines came to Rome.

Dum Sabīnī lūdōrum spectāculum spectant, Rōmulus signum dedit. Rōmānī virginēs pulchrās rapuērunt et abduxērunt.

The Sabines were furious. When they demanded their daughters, the Romans refused to surrender them, and the Sabines had to return home without them.

Sabīnī nūntiōs ad Rōmulum Rōmam misērunt. Sabīnī 'Filiās nostrās' *inquiunt* 'abduxistis. Vōs oppugnābimus et *urbem vestram* dēlēbimus.' Rōmānī 'Nostri mūrī validi *sunt*' respondērunt. 'Vōs nōn timēmus.'

Thereupon the Sabines collected their armed forces.

Sabīnī Rōmam *contendērunt* et bellum contrā Rōmānōs gessērunt. Rōmulus portās *clausit*, simulac Sabīnī Rōmam appropinquāvērunt.

By the treachery of Tarpeia a group of Sabines entered the city, but they could not break down Roman resistance.

Sabīnī autem Rōmānōs nōn vicērunt. Ubi Rōmānī et Sabīnī *iterum* proelium commisērunt, virginēs 'Cūr vōs pugnātis?' rogāvērunt. 'Nōs *apud* Rōmānōs manēre in animō habēmus.'

Although the Sabines were amazed at these words, they made peace and concluded a treaty with Rome.

Posteā multī Sabīnī Rōmam *migrāvērunt* et Rōmae habitāvērunt.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 20B (Card 42) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sabines, neighbours of the Latins

fēmina, -ae, f., woman

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum (4), come

virginēs: acc. pl. of virgo, -inis, f., maiden

Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine, of the Sabines

urbem: acc. sing. of urbs, -is, f., city

vester, -tra, -trum, your (pl.)

noster, -tra, -trum, our

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum (3), hasten, march rapidly
sunt, they are (see sum)

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum (3), close, shut

iterum (adv.), again, a second time

cur (interrogative adv.), why?

apud (prep. + acc.), among, near, at the house of

migrō (1), move

76 FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES IN -ER

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Voc.	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
Acc.	nigrum	nigram	nigrum	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
Gen.	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
Dat.	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō	nigris	nigris	nigris
Abl.	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō	nigris	nigris	nigris

Additional vocabulary

niger, -gra, -grum, *black*

piger, -gra, -grum, *lazy, inactive*

aeger, -gra, -grum, *sick, ill*

noster, -tra, -trum, *our*

vester, -tra, -trum, *your (pl.)*

meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*

tuus, -a, -um, *your (s.)*

porcus, -i, m., *pig*

cum (prep. + abl.), *with (together with)*

- 77** (a) The masculine vocative singular of *meus* is *mi*, e.g.
Ō mī fili! *O my son!* **Ō mī amīce!** *O my friend!*
- (b) *Tuus* has no vocative case.
- (c) *Niger* and other adjectives in *-er* drop the *e* when declined (like *magister*).

- 78** The preposition **cum**, *with* takes an *ablative* and is affixed to the four pronouns treated in 71, e.g.

mēcum, *with me*

nōbiscum, *with us*

tēcum, *with you (s.)*

vōbiscum, *with you (pl.)*

Drill

Translate orally

O my messenger!

of black pigs

O my Vergil!

with my slaves

to our garden (motion)

We have seen your (pl.) allies

with us

after six years

20C. Answer and/or translate

1. (a) Is <i>vōs</i> the subject or the object in <i>Vōs vidēmus</i> ? (b) Motivate your answer.	
2. Is a personal pronoun declined or conjugated?	1. (a) Object 17 71 (b) <i>Vidēmus</i> is 1st person plural inflexion and takes a first person plural subject (<i>nōs</i>), while <i>vōs</i> is 2nd person pl. 73

3. Select the personal pronouns from the following list: ab, nunc, nōs, dō, ego, multus, vōs, tū, et, nam	2. Declined. 71
4. Which preposition is affixed to certain pronouns and which case does it take?	3. nōs, ego, vōs, tū (71 V20)
5. Does the adjective <i>noster</i> increase or decrease in syllables when declined, or does it retain the same number of syllables?	4. cum, ablative (78)
Translate, expressing all pronouns 6. with Claudius; with me.	5. It retains the same number of syllables, viz. nos-ter, nos-trum, nos-tri. 76
7. O my son! O my Claudius!	6. c u m Claudiō; mēcum 78 78 45a 71 78
8. in your (s.) garden; of our town	7. Ō mī fili! Ō mī Claudi 77a 64a 77a 64a
9. You (s.) and I shall seize (<i>rapiō</i>)	8. In hortō tuō; oppidi 35 45a 40 26 51a nostri 40
10. To Marcus in Verona	9. Ego et tū rapiēmus. (74a) 73 62c
11. You (s.) have said many things to me.	10. Ad Marcum Vērōnam. (. 75)
12. Your (s.) son reads, while my son writes.	11. Tū mihi multa dixisti. 7 67 71 61 73 68a
	12. T u u s filius legit, dum 41b 40 7 45a 62a 44 m e u s filius scribit. 41b 40 7 45a 62a

20D. Translate into Latin, expressing the pronouns

1. You (s.) and I, O my messenger, shall soon visit the sick slaves.
2. I had in mind to attack the walls of your (s.) town, but you frightened me.
3. You (s.) and Marcus had waged war against our allies.

4. Claudius will send our slaves with you (pl.) to the gates of Ilium.
 5. *We* shall never give presents to lazy boys, but we shall give beautiful presents to you (s.).
 6. As soon as Anthony gave the signal, our (men) joined battle.
- ** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 20D** (Card 43) and check your work.**

20E. Write your own Latin sentence using one or more personal pronouns.

20.F Read outside teaching time in *Appendix A*:

4. Who was Eutropius?

20G. Advanced pupils may read outside teaching time from *Appendix A*:

5. Tarpeia's Treachery

UNIT 21

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN: IS, EA, ID

* Preparatory reading

Croesus and the Oracle of Delphi

1. <i>Is</i> numquam erat contentus.	1. He (that man) was never satisfied.
2. <i>Ōlim</i> Solon, philosophus, <i>eum</i> visitavit.	2. Solon, the philosopher, once visited him.
3. <i>Tū id</i> sciēs.	3. You will know it (that).
4. <i>Ēius</i> vīta incerta erat.	4. His life was uncertain.
5. <i>Eō</i> in locō ōrāculum consuluit.	5. In that place he consulted the oracle.
6. <i>Eī ea</i> dixī.	6. I said that (those things) to him.

In the above frames the **demonstrative pronoun** *is*, *ea*, *id* has been used in different cases.



Remains of the theatre and temple of Apollo in Delphi

— Photo Royal Hellenic Embassy

79 THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN: IS, EA, ID

He, she, it; that

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
Nom.	is	ea	id	eī (ii)	eae	ea
Voc.	—	—	—	—	—	—
Acc.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)

Learn crosswise, viz. *is, ea, id; eum, eam, id*, etc. Can you detect why this procedure will be easier?

80 The demonstrative adjective and pronoun *is, ea, id* is used

(a) as a **substantive** (noun), meaning *he, she, it*, e.g.

Is amat. *He loves.*

Ea (subject) amat. *She loves.*

Eī amant. *They love.*

Eae amant. *They (f.) love.*

(b) as an **adjective**, meaning *that*, e.g.

is servus, *that slave*

eae puellae, *those girls*

id bellum, *that war*

eī servī, *those slaves*

81 *Ēius* is used to denote **possession**, e.g.

ēius liber, *his or her book*

eōrum nūntius, *their messenger*

82 The word *that* can imply a plural in Latin as in frame (6) above.

83 A noun in **apposition** to another which it defines more clearly takes the same case as the one it qualifies, as in frame (2) above and **Marcō, servō bonō, ea dixī.** *I said that to Marcus, a good slave.*

Vocabulary 21

is, ea, id, he, she, it; that

multum pecūniae, much money

dīc mihī, tell me

vīta, -ae, f., life

locus, -i, m., place (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.)

rēgnum, -ī, n., kingdom, realm

ōrāculum, -ī, n., oracle

contentus, -a, -um, contented, satisfied

incertus, -a, -um, uncertain, doubtful

quandō? (interrogative adv.), when?

enim (conj., second or third word), for

tamen (adv.), however, nevertheless

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -sultum (3), consult; with dative:

consult the interests of

quamquam (conj.), although

beātus, -a, -um, happy

21A. Drill

- Conjugate in six indicative active tenses: *exclāmō, cōnsulō, compleō, scribō, mittō.*
- Decline together in the sing.: *ea vīta, id ōrāculum, is lūdus.*
- Decline together in the pl.: *ea fēmina, is nūntius, id bellum.*
- Give the principal parts of *dīcō, legō, dēlēō* and *capiō.*
- Translate orally

tibi ea dicam

eīs signum dat

cum eīs

eum nūntium mīsīt

ēius magister vetat

nōbīscum

with you (s.)

her horse

those games

she departs

they departed

those (women)

CROESUS AND THE ORACLE OF DELPHI

The town of *Delphi* in Greece housed the famous oracle and temple of Apollo. People of all ranks came to this town to consult the oracle on a great variety of questions ranging from religion and law to politics and the future. The will of the gods was interpreted by a priestess sitting on a tripod over a fissure from which emanated intoxicating gases, causing her to fall into the deepest swoon. Her incoherent words were interpreted by a priest and rendered in poetic verse which sometimes displayed errors of metre. This, coming from Apollo, puzzled the supplicants to a great extent. Later, replies were furnished in prose. The reputation of the oracle declined in the 5th century B.C., but a response is recorded as late as the reign of Emperor Julian, 353—363 A.D.

No doubt, the services rendered had to be paid for, and consequently supplicants brought along expensive gifts of all descriptions which were placed in the temple of Apollo.



Apollo "Citaredo," Archeological Museum, Venice

— Photo "Museo Archeologico Venezia"

The oracle of Delphi is said to have revealed to Lycurgus the laws of Sparta and to have assisted Plato with his legislation. However, the oracle's responses concerning the future were mostly vague and ambiguous. Croesus, king of Lydia, had this experience when he enquired from the oracle what the outcome would be if he should attack Cyrus, the mighty Persian king.

● *Croesus multum pecūniae et rēgnum magnum habēbat. Is tamen nōn erat*
● *contentus, Persārum terram enim quoque vincere in animō habuit. Ōlim Solon,*
● *philosophus, eum visitāvit. Croesus 'Dic mihi' rogāvit, 'quando vir beātus est?'*

"When you are about to die," Solon replied, "you will know, for life is very uncertain." Croesus found it hard to believe Solon's philosophy on happiness — that a man had to look back on his whole life to determine whether he was happy or not. By his own judgment, however, he was happy.

Quamquam Croesus beātus erat, eius vīta incerta erat.

In due course Croesus began to dream about the extension of his power. At the same time he cast a covetous eye in the direction of Persian territory. Accordingly, he proceeded to Greece and arrived in Delphi.

Eō in locō ōrāculum cōsultuit.

He asked the fateful question mentioned above and awaited the response.

Ōrāculum 'Ego tibi ea dicō' respondit. 'Sī Persās oppugnāveris, rēgnū magnum dēlēbis.' Croesus maximē *laetus* erat. Itaque is Persās oppugnāvit, sed Cŷrus eum vicit.

In this way Croesus had destroyed his own kingdom! When in battle he observed that the odds were against him, he fled quietly.

Post *pugnam* Cŷrus 'Ubi Croesus est?' rogāvit. 'Eum nōn videō.' Ei autem Croesum cēperunt et ad Cŷrum dūxērunt.

In a moment the happiness Croesus had known had been turned into sorrow. He was particularly sad and unhappy when he faced Cyrus and heard that he was to be burnt alive.

Dum in *rogō* iacet, Croesus 'Solon! Solon!' *exclāmāvit*.

Cyrus was amazed to hear the condemned man call on Solon. He asked Croesus what was ailing him.

Is vir 'Vīta incerta est' respondit. 'Nunc ego id *sciō*.'

Cŷrus postquam fābulam *audīvit*, eum liberāvit. *Posthāc* Croesus multōs annōs apud Cŷrum habitāvit.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card of Unit 21B** (Card 45) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Delphi, -ōrum, m. pl., *Delphi, seat of the oracle in Greece*
Croesus, -ī, m., *Croesus, king of Lydia*
erat, he, she, it was (see *sum*)
Persae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Persians*
Solon, -ōnis, m., *Solon, one of the seven Wise Men of Greece*
philosophus, -ī, m., *philosopher*
sciō, scire, scivī (-ī), scitum (4), *know*
laetus, -a, -um, *happy*

Cŷrus, ī, m., *Cyrus, a Persian king*
pugna, -ae, f., *fight, battle*
ubi? (adv.), *where?*
rogus, -ī, m., *funeral pile*
exclāmō (1), *exclaim, cry out*
audiō (4), *hear*
posthāc (adv.), *hereafter, after this*

NUMERALS

84 Cardinal numbers

I	ūnus, -a, -um	one
II	duo, duae, duo	two
III	trēs, trēs, tria	three
IV	quattuor	four
V	quinque	five
VI	sex	six
VII	septem	seven
VIII	octō	eight
IX	novem	nine
X	decem	ten

85 Cardinal numbers are used like adjectives in Latin. Of the above only *ūnus*, *duo* and *trēs* are declined.

86 The accusative of *unus*, *duo* and *tres*:

	m.	f.	n.
Acc.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum
	duōs	duās	duo
	trēs	trēs	tria

21C. Answer and/or translate

1. To which god was the temple dedicated at Delphi?	
2. Who was Solon?	1. Apollo U 21B
3. Was Croesus burnt alive by Cyrus or was his life spared?	2. One of the seven Wise Men of Greece RV 20
4. Is the demonstrative used adjectivally or substantivally in <i>Marcum cum eō servō mīsi</i> ?	3. His life was spared by Cyrus. U 21B
<i>Translate</i>	
5. Into that town with you (pl.)	4. Adjectivally 80b
6. She gave that to them.	5. In id oppidum vōbiscum 21 80b 51a 78 71
7. I waged three wars against them.	6. E a eīs id dedit. 80a 30 82 24
8. Two girls, Mary and Julia, frightened two sailors.	7. Tria bella contrā eōs 86 17 RV18 79 gessi. 68a
<i>Complete, using Latin words</i>	
9. Unus + novem = □	8. Duae puellae, Maria et Iūlia, 85 7 8 (83) duōs nautās terruērunt. 86 17 19 54a
10. Octō — □ = sex	9. decem 84

11. $\square + \text{quattuor} = \text{septem}$	10. duo 84
12. $\text{Novem} - \square = \text{quattuor}$	11. trēs 84
13. $\text{Decem} - \square = \text{trēs}$	12. quinque 84
	13. septem 84

21D. *Translate into Latin*

1. Marcus did not send those messengers to the oracle at Delphi.
2. Although I have asked many things about his life, I shall not say those things to you (pl.).
3. Those (men) remained at Delphi for two years, for (*enim*) they asked the oracle for assistance.
4. When will you (s.) send their slaves with us to the gates of that town, O Fabius?
5. Claudius waged war in that kingdom for four years, but he did not take (*capio*) that island and that town.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 21D (Card 46) and check your work.

21E. Write your own Latin sentence containing a demonstrative pronoun in any case.

TEST 4

1. Who wrote the <i>Aeneid</i> ?
2. Who is called <i>the mythical ancestor</i> of the Romans?
3. Which Roman historian wrote the <i>Ab Urbe Condita</i> in 142 books?
4. What was the name of the herdsman who found Romulus and Remus on the banks of the Tiber?
5. After whom was the city of Rome named?
6. Which Greek town housed the oracle consulted by men of all ranks?
7. Select the pronouns from the following list: et, is, tu, -que, ea, sex, nos, ego, id, vita, vos.
8. Add <i>a good boy</i> , in Latin, in apposition to <i>Marcus</i> in the sentence <i>We walk to the garden of Marcus</i> .
<i>Translate</i>
9. We had said that to them.
10. You, my messenger, will hasten (<i>contendō</i>) to Claudius in Troy.
11. With us; with the allies
12. He ordered our slaves to defend their walls.
13. Your (pl.) sons give the signal; mine attack.
14. I shall consult your (s.) interests.
15. When will you (s.) devise a plan?
16. O my son! At Delphi.
17. We were already engaging in battle, for (<i>enim</i>) the Sabines had attacked us.
18. After two years.
19. To those (men) (motion); to those sailors (motion).
20. Of that town; of those poets

**** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Test 4 (Card 47) and check your work.**

UNIT 22

THE STORY OF ROME II

Rome becomes the mistress of Italy

In little more than 600 years the small settlement founded on the left bank of the Tiber in 753 B.C. had succeeded in extending her influence over all Italy south of the Po.

Under the Tarquins Rome had extended her sway over Latium and the southern part of Etruria. The *Latīni* and *Hernicī* were her allies. But with the expulsion of the kings Rome's authority suffered a temporary setback when the

- 1 Tarquins enlisted the aid of Lars Porsena, Etruscan Prince of Clusium, and the *Latīni* under Octavius Mamilius of Tusculum.



The Pantheon, Rome

— “Fot. Alinari”

2 *Horatius Cocles*

In the struggle that followed the *Latīni* were defeated at Lake Regillus in 497 B.C. Porsena, however, marched on Rome. Two stories of this war have come down to us — those of Mucius Scaevola (treated in the text) and Horatius

- 2 Cocles. With the aid of two companions Horatius defended the bridge leading
- 2 to Rome against the whole Etruscan army of Porsena, while the Romans destroyed the bridge behind him to prevent the Etruscans from crossing to Rome.
- 2 Just before the bridge collapsed, Horatius sent his companions to safety and held the position single-handed. Finally, he jumped into the river and swam back

- 2 to the city. Porsena did not succeed in taking Rome and was obliged to lead his army back.

22.1 Who was Lars Porsena?

22.2 Tell the story of Horatius Cocles.

The Volscians

Rome also suffered as a result of frequent raids into her territory by the *Aequi* and the *Volsci*. In 493 B.C. the Romans attacked the *Volsci* and besieged their town Corioli.

Caius Marcius Coriolanus

- During the siege of Corioli the Volscians on a particular day suddenly opened the gates of their town and dashed out upon the Romans. Caius Marcius and his followers repelled the attack and drove the enemy back into their town. Some accounts read that Marcius followed them through the gates and was shut in alone with the enemy. He drove the Volscians back single-handed and opened the gates for the Roman army. Thus Corioli was taken and Caius Marcius was given the name *Coriolanus* in memory of his valour.

How Caius Marcius Coriolanus marched on Rome at a later date is dealt with in the text.

The Aequi

- When in 459 B.C. Rome was threatened by the forces of the *Aequi*, Cincinnatus (Lucius Quinctius) was called from his farm and made *dictator* to defeat the enemy. Having accomplished this, Cincinnatus laid down his office and returned to his farm.

The siege of Vei

The Etruscans had been weakened by frequent attacks from the Gauls to the north of them, while at sea they had suffered defeat at the hands of the Greeks. The Romans decided to attack the Etruscan city of Vei, 12 miles from Rome, probably with a view of acquiring its valuable land.

- The siege of Vei by Camillus, the Roman dictator, started in 405 B.C. It is said that the Romans consulted the oracle of Delphi on how to take Vei. They received the answer that a nearby lake was to be drained. Accordingly, the Romans dug a tunnel through the side of the hill which caused the water to flow out. Using the same tunnel to enter Vei, the Romans succeeded in taking the city.

After this, Camillus took several other Etruscan towns and cities. His capture of Falerii is treated in the text.

22.3 Who took Corioli? How?

22.4 Who defeated the *Aequi*?

22.5 Who took Vei and how was it done?

Rome sacked by the Gauls

The Gauls who had weakened the Etruscans by their unending raids, now suddenly turned their attention further southwards to threaten Rome.



*Apollo of Veii, National Museum of the
"Villa Giulia," Rome*

— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

6 In 390 B.C. the Gauls under Brennus Gallus invaded Etruria, wiping out all
resistance and advancing on Rome itself. The Roman army was defeated, having
met the Gauls at the river Allia, a tributary of the Tiber. Thus Rome became the
spoil of the invaders, for all resistance had crumbled and all defenders had dis-
appeared. News of the disaster at the river Allia caused all inhabitants of Rome to
take to flight, except a few of the bravest soldiers who shut themselves up in
7 the Capitol (fortress) and some of the oldest men who took up their seats in
7 the Senate house.

When the victorious Gauls entered this chamber, they were amazed at the
silent, dignified men doing nothing but sitting. Then a Gaul stepped forward
7 and stroked the long, white beard of Marcus Papirius, whereupon the Roman
7 jumped up and struck him with his ivory sceptre. Enraged by the sudden attack,
the Gauls killed all the Romans in the Senate house and set fire to the city.

Only the Capitol remained intact, held bravely for more than seven months.
8 One dark night the Gauls climbed up the steep cliff so silently that the foremost
reached the summit without arousing the suspicion of the sentinels. But at this
8 moment a flock of geese, kept on the summit by the soldiers because they were
8 sacred to Juno, gave the alarm. Marcus Manlius rushed from his bed in time to
strike the foremost Gaul such a blow that he fell headlong down the cliff, carry-
8 ing many of his companions along with him to their deaths below. Meanwhile
the Romans had awakened and they came to the assistance of Manlius to repel
8 the attack.

In the meantime, the Romans who had survived and fled after the disaster
at the river Allia, collected themselves under Camillus who had been exiled

from Rome on the grounds that he had taken for himself the spoils after conquering a city. Camillus enlisted the assistance of the Ardeans and marched on Rome to drive out the Gauls.

Back in Rome the Romans, despairing of being saved, had agreed to a truce with the Gauls. In terms of the truce the Romans had to pay the invaders
9 a thousand pounds of gold. While the gold was being weighed, the Romans
9 complained that the scales were false, whereupon Brennus Gallus threw his
9 sword into the balance in order to add more weight to the quantity, exclaiming
9 insolently '*Vae victis!*' (Woe to the vanquished!)

10 At this moment Camillus and his followers arrived on the scene. He ordered the Romans to redeem their city with the sword and not with gold. According to some accounts the Gauls were killed to a man in the battle that followed. Although the Romans had to rebuild their city, they had not been conquered.

Up to 349 B.C. the Gauls continued their raids on Roman territory and crushed the Aequians in the process. In the text the stories of Valerius Corvus and Titus Manlius Torquatus are related. These two Romans were challenged
11 to duels by giant Gauls in 349 and 361 B.C. respectively. After 349 B.C. the
11 Gauls no longer constituted a threat to Rome.

22.6 Who defeated the Romans in 390 B.C.?

22.7 Who was Marcus Papirius?

22.8 Relate how the sacred geese saved the Capitol.

22.9 Which events led to Brennus Gallus using the words '*Vae victis!*' and what did he imply?

22.10 Who defeated the Gauls and saved Rome?

22.11 From which date was the Gaulish threat averted?

The Latin War

After the defeat of the Gauls the *Latīnī* pressed their claims for a bigger
12 share in the government of Rome. In fact, they demanded that they share the
12 government with the Romans, professing to be as strong as they were. They
12 demanded one of the consuls and half of the seats in the Senate. When these claims were rejected by the Romans, the Latins organised themselves into a
13 league with the *Volscī* and the Campanians.

Assisted by the *Samnītēs*, who by the treaty of 341 B.C. were obliged to render support, Rome attacked the League forces in 340 B.C. and defeated them.
14 Having detached the Campanians, Rome finally defeated the Latins in 338
14 B.C. The story of Decius Mus is treated in the text.

22.12 Which claims did the Latins press against Rome?

22.13 Which tribes assisted the Latins against Rome?

22.14 When did the war end?

Three further wars

Before Rome could call herself the mistress of all Italy south of the Po two more wars followed against the *Samnītēs* and a fierce struggle ensued against the Greek city of Tarentum which had summoned the assistance of Pyrrhus of Epirus. These wars are treated briefly in Book 2.

UNIT 23

FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS

* Preparatory reading

The Patriotism of P. Decius Mus

1. Rōmānī vincent, sī imperātor Rōmānus in pugna prīmus ceciderit.	1. The Romans will conquer, if their commander fell first in battle.
2. Decius ōrāculī verba audīverat.	2. Decius had heard the words of the oracle.
3. Decius ad Vesuvium pervēnit.	3. Decius arrived at Vesuvius.
4. Rōmānī castra posuērunt et munīvērunt.	4. The Romans pitched (their) camp and fortified it.
5. Rōmānī Latīnōs punient.	5. The Romans will punish the Latini.
6. Rōmānī Decium magnō honōre sepelivērunt.	6. The Romans buried Decius with great respect.

Five fourth conjugation verbs have been used in the above frames in various tenses.

FOURTH CONJUGATION VERBS

PRESENT AND PERFECT STEM TENSES

87 Indicative Mood

Present stem: **audi-**

Active

(a) P R E S E N T T E N S E				
Person	Stem	Inflexion	Example	English
Sing. 1	audi-	-ō	audiō	I hear, am hearing, do hear
2	audi-	-s	audis	You (s.) hear, are hearing, etc.
3	audi-	-t	audit	He, she hears, is hearing
Pl. 1	audi-	-mus	audimus	We hear, are hearing, do hear
2	audi-	-tis	auditis	You (pl.) hear, are hearing
3	audi-	-unt	audiunt	They hear, are hearing

(b) IMPERFECT TENSE

Sing. 1	audi-	-ēbam	audiēbam	<i>I was hearing, used to hear</i>
2	audi-	-ēbās	audiēbās	<i>You (s.) were hearing, etc.</i>
3	audi-	-ēbat	audiēbat	<i>He, she was hearing</i>
Pl. 1	audi-	-ēbāmus	audiēbāmus	<i>We were hearing</i>
2	audi-	-ēbātis	audiēbātis	<i>You (pl.) were hearing</i>
3	audi-	-ēbant	audiēbant	<i>They were hearing</i>

(c) FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE

Sing. 1	audi-	-am	audiam	<i>I shall hear, shall be hearing</i>
2	audi-	-ēs	audiēs	<i>You (s.) will hear, etc.</i>
3	audi-	-et	audiet	<i>He, she will hear</i>
Pl. 1	audi-	-ēmus	audiēmus	<i>We shall hear</i>
2	audi-	-ētis	audiētis	<i>You (pl.) will hear</i>
3	audi-	-ent	audient	<i>They will hear</i>

Indicative Mood

Perfect stem: **audiv-**

Active

(d) PERFECT TENSE

				Perfect	Aorist
Sing. 1	audiv-	-ī	audivī	<i>I have heard</i>	<i>I heard</i>
2	audiv-	-istī	audivistī	<i>You (s.) have heard</i>	<i>You (s.) heard</i>
3	audiv-	-it	audivit	<i>He, she has heard</i>	<i>He, she heard</i>
Pl. 1	audiv-	-imus	audivimus	<i>We have heard</i>	<i>We heard</i>
2	audiv-	-istis	audivistis	<i>You (pl.) have heard</i>	<i>You (pl.) heard</i>
3	audiv-	-ērunt	audivērunt or audivēre	<i>They have heard</i>	<i>They heard</i>

(e) PLUPERFECT TENSE

Sing. 1	audiv-	-eram	audiveram	<i>I had heard, had been hearing</i>
2	audiv-	-erās	audiverās	<i>You (s.) had heard, etc.</i>
3	audiv-	-erat	audiverat	<i>He, she had heard</i>
Pl. 1	audiv-	-erāmus	audiverāmus	<i>We had heard</i>
2	audiv-	-erātis	audiverātis	<i>You (pl.) had heard</i>
3	audiv-	-erant	audiverant	<i>They had heard</i>

(f) FUTURE PERFECT TENSE

Sing. 1	audiv-	-erō	audiverō	<i>I shall have heard, been hearing</i>
2	audiv-	-eris	audiveris	<i>You (s.) will have heard</i>
3	audiv-	-erit	audiverit	<i>He, she will have heard</i>
Pl. 1	audiv-	-erimus	audiverimus	<i>We shall have heard</i>
2	audiv-	-eritis	audiveritis	<i>You (pl.) will have heard</i>
3	audiv-	-erint	audiverint	<i>They will have heard</i>

Comment on the personal endings above.

88 Verbs having their present stem in **-ī**, belong to the fourth conjugation.

- 89 (a) Some nouns have *different meanings* in the *plural*, while others are used in the plural only, e.g.

castrum, -ī, n., *a fort*

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*

liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*

- (b) When used as the subject of a sentence these plural nouns take a verb in the plural, e.g.

Liberī audiunt. *The children hear.*

Castra magna sunt. *The camp is large* (See Rule 94a).

Vocabulary 23

mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *fortify*

pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *punish*

nesciō, -ire, nescivī (nescii), nescitum (4), *not to know, be ignorant of*

ēradiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *instruct, teach*

perveniō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (4) ad + acc., *arrive at, reach*

custōdiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *guard, keep watch*

sepeliō, -ire, -ivī, -pultum (4), *bury*

cōnstituō, -ere -uī, -ūtum (3) + inf., *decide, determine*

contendō, -ere, -dī, -tum (3), *hasten, march rapidly*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum (3), *fall*

Rōmānus, -ī, m., *a Roman*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman*

verbum, -ī, n., *word*

quōmodo? *interrogative adv., how?*

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*; castra pōnō, -ere posuī,

positum (3), *pitch camp*

primus, -a, -um, *first*

bene (adv.), *well*

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *hear*



Remains of a Roman aqueduct in Campania

— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

23A. Drill

1. Conjugate *pūniō*, *ēradiō*, *abdūcō*, *habeō* and *perveniō* in six indicative active tenses.
2. Decline fully in the sing.: *verbum*, *pugna*, *castrum*, *Decius* in the pl.: *castra*, *Latīnī*, *pugna*, *liberī*
3. Give the principal parts of *pūniō*, *audiō*, *cōnstituō*, *dō*, *mūniō*.
4. Translate orally

nescīmus
punient
mūnīvistis
we bury

custōdiēbās
mittere cōstituit
sepeliunt
you (pl.) fortify

castra posuerat
liberōs ēradiēmus
verba audīverit
we decided to punish

THE PATRIOTISM OF P. DECIUS MUS

In the war against the Latini in 340 B.C. Decius, the Roman consul, sacrificed his life in order to gain the goodwill of the gods. In this way he wished to enable the Romans to record a victory on the field of battle. In a subsequent battle against the Samnites his son displayed similar courage.

The battle in which Decius played such a prominent part was fought near Vesuvius (which caused the destruction of Pompeii after an eruption in 79 A.D.).

Before embarking on a campaign it was customary for the Romans to consult the auspices. This they did by slaughtering an animal and examining the entrails. When in this case the auspices proved unfavourable, they turned to the gods.

Rōmānī auxilium deōs rogāre cōstituērunt. Deī eōs ōrāculum cōsulere iussērunt.

Rōmānī itaque ad ōrāculum contendērunt. Rōmānī 'Quōmodo Latīnōs vincēmus?' rogāvērunt. 'Nōs nescīmus.'

Ōrāculum 'Vōs ērudiam' respondit, 'sed vōbīs multa nōn dicam. Rōmānī vincent, sī imperātor Rōmānus in pugna primus ceciderit.'

When the Romans heard these words, they were very sad.

Decius autem simulac ōrāculī verba audivit, Rōmam servāre cōstituit. Decius cum Rōmānīs ad Vesuvium contendit. Rōmānī ubi ad Vesuvium pervēnērunt, castra posuērunt; castra munivērunt atque custōdivērunt.

Plans for the attack on the Latini were made and Decius addressed his men.

Rōmānīs 'Latīnōs puniēmus' Decius dixit, 'terram nostram enim dēlēvērunt.'

Thereupon Decius mounted his horse, and, before he could be stopped, he rushed into the very midst of the enemy, fighting madly.

Decius multōs Latīnōs gladiō occidit, sed tandem cecidit.

Inspired by the example of their commander, the Romans joined battle.

Deinde Rōmānī fortiter pugnāvērunt; multōs occidērunt; Latīnōs vicērunt.

Posteā Rōmānī Decium magnō honōre sepelivērunt.

** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Unit 23B (Card 48) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Latins
imperātor, -ōris, m., commander
pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle
Decius, -ī, m., Publius Decius Mus

magnō honōre, with great respect
Vesuvius, -īī, m., Vesuvius, the celebrated volcano in Campania at the first eruption of which Pompeii, Herculaneum and Stabiae were destroyed in 79 A.D.



Vesuvius with the bay of Naples in the foreground

— “Foto ENIT ROMA”

23C. Answer and/or translate

1. Near which volcano did the Romans defeat the Latini in 340 B.C?	
2. In the sentence. <i>Vōs Rōmānōs puniētis</i> state. (a) Object, case and number. (b) Verb, tense and person.	1. Vesuvius U 23B
3. Fill in: Verbs having their present stem in belong to the fourth conjugation.	2. (a) Rōmānōs, acc., pl. (17 45a) (b) puniētis, Fut. Simple, 2nd person plural. 87c
4. Is the agreement between subject and verb correct in <i>Castra multos habent</i> ? The camp has (holds) many men.	3. -ī 88
<i>Translate</i> 5. How will you (s.) punish those boys? We don't know.	4. Yes. <i>Castra</i> is a plural noun and needs a verb in the plural in agreement. 89b

6. We arrived at their town.	5. Quōmodo eōs puerōs V23 79 17 51b puniēs? Nescimus. 87c 87a
7. They had arrived at Troy.	6. Ad eōrum oppidum 21 81 21 51a pervēnimus. V23 87d
8. I have decided to fortify the large camp.	7. Trōiam pervēnerant. 22 V23 87e
9. When will Fabius instruct (<i>ēradiō</i>) that man's children?	8. Castra magna munire 46b 89 40 59 46a cōstitui. V23 68a
10. After the fight we hastened to Delphi with him.	9. Quandō Fabius ēius V21 7 81 liberōs ērudiet? 89a 17 87c
11. <i>She</i> has pitched camp on that island.	10. Post pugnam Delphōs cum 21 21 19 22 45a 78 e ō contendimus. 79 68a
	11. Ea castra in eā 80a 17 35 80b insulā posuit. 37 68a

23D. Translate into Latin

1. Although we had fortified our camp well, the Gauls decided to attack us.
2. When I reached beautiful Verona (city), I consulted the interests (V21) of your (s.) friends.
3. After he had instructed their children in that school for three years, he hastened to Italy.
4. Where shall we pitch camp in that town? We do not know.
5. Because Decius had served the fatherland well, the Romans decided to bury him in Rome.

**** Ask your teacher for the Control Card of Unit 23D (Card 49) and check your work.**

23E. Write your own Latin sentence using a fourth conjugation verb in any tense.

23F. Advanced pupils may read outside teaching time from *Appendix A*:

6. Pandora's Box

UNIT 24

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD ACTIVE

* *Preparatory reading*

Valerius Corvus defeats a Giant Gaul

1. Camillō 'Oppugnā Gallōs' Rōmānī dīxērunt.	1. The Romans said to Camillus, "Attack the Gauls."
2. Camillus 'Oppugnāte Gallōs' Rōmānīs dīxit.	2. Camillus said to the Romans, "Attack the Gauls."
3. Discipulī 'Salvē magistra!' in- quiunt.	3. The pupils said, "Greetings, teacher!"
4. Magister 'Salvēte discipulī' inquit.	4. The teacher said, "Greetings, pupils!"
5. Valerius 'Dēfende castra' inquit 'mī amīce.'	5. Valerius said, "Defend the camp, my friend."
6. Valerius 'Dēfendite castrā' inquit 'meī amīcī.'	6. Valerius said, "Defend the camp, my friends."
7. Valerius 'Venī' inquit 'Ō Galle.'	7. Valerius said, "Come, (O) Gaul."
8. Camillus 'Venīte' inquit 'Ō Galli.'	8. Camillus said, "Come, (O) Gauls."

In the frames above the **Imperative mood** has been used in the singular and plural active of all four conjugations. Can you determine from the above when to use the Imperative in the singular and when in the plural?

90

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD ACTIVE

Conjugation	Person	Present stem	Inflexion	Imperative	English
FIRST	Sing. 2 Pl. 2	amā- amā-	-a -te	amā amāte	Love (you s.) Love (you pl.)
SECOND	Sing. 2 Pl. 2	monē- monē-	-e -te	monē monēte	Advise (you s.) Advise (you pl.)
THIRD	Sing. 2 Pl. 2	reg- reg-	-e -ite	rege regite	Rule (you s.) Rule (you pl.)
FOURTH	Sing. 2 Pl. 2	audi- audi-	-i -te	audi audite	Hear (you s.) Hear (you pl.)

91 (a) The **imperative** is used to express *direct positive commands* in the second person.

(b) The imperative can take an object, e.g. *Gallōs* in frame (1) above.

92 The present stem is used as the **imperative singular** for verbs of the first, second and fourth conjugations, while for third conjugation verbs *-e* is added to the stem. *Dīcō* and *dūcō* are exceptions, dropping the *-e*, e.g.

Dīc ea reginae.

Tell the queen that.

Dūc nautās.

Lead the sailors.

93 The **plural imperative** consists of the present stem + *-te*, except verbs of the third conjugation which take *-ite* with the present stem.

Vocabulary 24

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -cītum (2), *to be silent*

vītō (1), *avoid, escape*

clāmō, (1), *shout, cry out*

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum (4), *come*

victōriam reportō (1), *gain a victory*

operam dō (1) + dat., *pay attention to*

cōsistō, -ere, -stitī (-stitum), 3, *halt, take one's stand*

frūstrā (adv.), *in vain*

arrogantia, -ae, f., *arrogance*

galea, -ae, f., *helmet*

insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush*

impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl., *baggage*

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms, weapons*

oculus, -ī, m., *eye*

corvus, -ī, m., *a raven*

subitō (adv.), *suddenly*



The Porta Latina, Rome
— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

24A. Drill

1. Conjugate *veniō*, *vitō*, *taceō* and *contendō* in six tenses of the indicative active.
2. Decline fully in the sing.: *opera*, *corvus*, *rēgnum*
in the plural: *insidiae*, *impedimenta*, *oculus*
3. Give the principal parts of *nesciō*, *veniō*, *portō* and *iubeō*.

4. Translate orally

<i>venī ad mē</i>	<i>custōdīte impedīmenta</i>	<i>pūnī pigrōs</i>
<i>pōne castra</i>	<i>vītā insidiās</i>	<i>proelium committite</i>
<i>mittite nūntiōs</i>	<i>tacēte, discipulī</i>	<i>cōnsule ōrāculum</i>
<i>lead (you pl.) the slaves</i>	<i>hasten to Rome, slaves</i>	
<i>punish the boys, masters</i>	<i>say it to me, Valerius</i>	

24B. Read, following the instructions of Unit 14B

VALERIUS CORVUS DEFEATS A GIANT GAUL

The Gauls continued to make occasional inroads into peninsular Italy. In 349 B.C. the Romans forestalled a further foray by calling upon their allies to assist them in driving out the Gauls. Camillus was the leader of the Roman forces, and one of his tribunes was M. Valerius, aged 23 years.

Before they engaged in battle, a giant Gaul stepped forward from his lines and challenged any Roman to a duel.

Rōmānī Gallum audīvērunt, sed tacuērunt, Gallum magnum enim timuērunt.

Valerius autem amīcis 'Dicite Gallō: Valerius proelium committet' mox dixit. Camillus 'Ō Valerī' inquit, 'nunc in castrīs hic manē; custōdī impedimenta nostra; nōs Gallōs oppugnābimus. Verba mea audī.'

Valerius autem 'Dēfendite castra, amīci meī' respondit. 'Vītate insidiās. Ego Galli arrogantiae operam dābo.'

All his friends tried to dissuade him from accepting the challenge, but in vain. Valerius had decided that the honour of Rome was at stake.

Valerius postquam arma cēpit, ad Gallum appropinquāvit. 'Venī ad mē, Ō Galle!' clāmāvit Valerius. *Mirābile dictū*, corvus ex caelō volāvit et in Rōmānī galeā constitit. Corvus Galli oculōs subitō oppugnāvit. Galli 'Corvum fugā' exclāmāvērunt; frūstrā.

Dum Rōmānī atque Galli spectant, Valerius Gallum magnum occīdit. Deinde postquam Valerium victōriam reportāre adiūvit, corvus ēvolāvit.

Rōmānī post pugnam Valeriō nōmen 'Corvum' dedērunt.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 24B** (Card 51) and check your work.

Reference vocabulary

Camillus, -ī, m., M. Furius Camillus, a celebrated Roman military leader who took Veii and freed Rome from the Gauls.
nōmen, -inis, n., name.

Valerius, -ī, m., M. Valerius Corvus, who, assisted by a raven, killed a giant Gaul in a duel.
mīrābile dictū, wonderful to relate

24C. Answer and/or translate

1. Is the imperative mood used (a) to make a statement, or (b) to give a command?	
2. Is the person addressed in a command written in the nom., voc. or abl.?	1. To give a command (b) 91a
3. When is the imperative used in the singular in giving a command?	2. Vocative U 24 frames (3—8)
4. When is the imperative used in the plural in giving a command?	3. When only one person is addressed U 24 frames (1, 3, 5, 7)
5. Turn the following direct negative command into a direct positive command in English and translate it into Latin: <i>Do not pitch camp, boys.</i>	4. When two or more persons are addressed. U 24 frames (2, 4, 6, 8).
<i>Translate</i> 6. Tell me, my son.	5. Pitch camp, boys. Pōnite castra, Ō pueri. 93 91b 12 51b
7. Stay in Troy, my messengers.	6. Dic mihi, mī fili. 92 71 77a 64a
8. Guard the camp well, Claudius.	7. Manēte Trōiae, mei 93 50 40 nūntiī. 12 45a
9. Romans, carry off the women to the gates of Rome.	8. Custōdi bene castra, 92 14 91b Claudi. 64a
10. Send two slaves with her to Athens, Fabia.	9. Rōmānī, abdūcite fēminās 12 45a 91a 93 91b ad Rōmae portās. 21 26 19
11. Help us to defend Rome and defeat the Gauls, allies.	10. Mitte d u ō s servōs cum 92 85 86 91b 78 eā Athēnās, Fabia. 79 22 12

12. Give them assistance, slave.	11. Socii, nōs adiuvāte 12 45a 91b 93 Rōmam dēfendere et Gallōs 46b 46a 23a 46b vincere. 46a
	12. Dā eis auxilium, serve. 92 30 91b 12



The theatre of Verona, built in 79 A.D. and still in use. Verona was the birthplace of the Roman poet, Catullus

— Photo Gianni Ferrari

24D. Translate into Latin

1. Fortify and defend the camp, Marcus; I shall guard the walls of the town.
2. Say that to him, my son, and stay with (*apud*) me after the battle.
3. When will Claudius come to our town? Call him immediately, messenger.
4. Sailors, carry the baggage to Manlius in Verona, and avoid an ambush.
5. Lead the Romans to Vesuvius, Valerius, and defeat the Latini in battle.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 24 D** (Card 52) and check your work.

24E. Write your own Latin sentence containing an imperative.

24F. Can you read the extracts from the **Book of Proverbs** in *Appendix A 7*?

UNIT 25

THE COPULATIVE VERB "SUM"



Venus de Milo, Louvre
— Photo "Musée du Louvre"

* *Preparatory reading*

Classical Gods and Goddesses

1. <i>Erant multī deī deaeque in Ītaliā et Graeciā.</i>	1. There were many gods and goddesses in Italy and Greece.
2. <i>Iuppiter erat rēx deōrum.</i>	2. Jupiter was the king of the gods.
3. <i>Mars deus bellī erat.</i>	3. Mars was the god of war.
4. <i>Venus pulchra erat.</i>	4. Venus was beautiful.
5. <i>Venus amōris dea erat.</i>	5. Venus was the goddess of love.
6. <i>Deī deaeque numquam fuērunt aegrī.</i>	6. The gods and goddesses were never ill.

In the frames above the copulative verb *sum* has been used in various ways.

THE COPULATIVE VERB SUM

Indicative Mood

sum, esse, fui, to be

94 Present stem: es-

Perfect stem: fu-

Person	(a) PRESENT TENSE	(d) PERFECT TENSE
		Perfect Aorist
Sing. 1	sum I am	fui I have been I was
2	es You (s.) are	fuisti You (s.) have been You (s.) were
3	est He, she, it is	fuit He has been He was
Pl. 1	sumus We are	fuimus We have been We were
2	estis You (pl.) are	fuistis You (pl.) have been You (pl.) were
3	sunt They are	fuērunt They have been They were
		or fuēre

	(b) IMPERFECT TENSE	(e) PLUPERFECT TENSE
Sing. 1	eram I was, I used to be	fueram I had been
2	erās You (s.) were	fuerās You (s.) had been
3	erat He, she, it was	fuerat He had been
Pl. 1	erāmus We were	fuerāmus We had been
2	erātis You (pl.) were	fuerātis You (pl.) had been
3	erant They were	fuerant They had been

	(c) FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE	(f) FUTURE PERFECT TENSE
Sing. 1	erō I shall be	fuerō I shall have been
2	eris You (s.) will be	fueris You (s.) will have been
3	erit He, she, it will be	fuerit He will have been
Pl. 1	erimus We shall be	fuerimus We shall have been
2	eritis You (pl.) will be	fueritis You (pl.) will have been
3	erunt They will be	fuerint They will have been

N.B. Imperfect or Perfect?

erat = he was, generally was, or was for some time.

fuit = he has been or was on a particular occasion.

Compare frames (2) and (6).



Mars (Ares) resting, Terme Museum, Rome

— "Fot. Alinari"

- 95** The copulative verb *sum* does not take an object. Being a copulative verb, it needs a **complement** to complete the sentence. In the sentence
Venus pulchra erat (*Venus is beautiful*)
pulchra is the *complement*. The adjective *pulchra* has been used *predicatively*.
- 96** A **noun complement** must agree with the subject of the sentence in **case**, as in frames (2) and (3) above, viz. *Iuppiter* and *rēx* are both nominative, like *Mars* and *deus*.
- 97** An **adjective complement** must agree with the subject in *gender*, *number* and *case*, as in frame (4) above.
- 98** With **compound subjects** (m. and f.) the adjective agrees with the masculine rather than the feminine noun as *multī* and *aegrī* in frames (1) and (6) above.
- 99** **Word order**: The copulative verb *sum* does not necessarily stand last.
- Where *est* means *there is* the subject follows the copulative verb as in frame (1) above.
 - A *noun complement* may stand either before or after the copulative verb as in frames (2) and (3) above.
 - The copulative verb generally follows the *adjective complement* as in frame (4) above.
 - In a *negative sentence* the complement (noun or adjective) follows the copulative verb as in frame (6) above.

Vocabulary 25

sum, esse, fui, to be

sapientia, -ae, f., wisdom

scientia, -ae, f., knowledge

audacia, -ae, f., courage, daring, boldness, bravery

dilūcūlum, -ī, n., dawn

Inferī, -ōrum, m. pl., Underworld, realm of the dead

mūsica, -ae, f., music

agrīcultura, -ae, f., agriculture

sacer, -cra, -crum, sacred

somnium, -īī, n., dream

vīnum, -ī, n., wine

amōris: gen. sing. of *amor, -ōris, m., love*

frātrēs: nom. pl. of *frāter, -tris, m., brother*

rēx, rēgis, m., king

etiam (adv.), *also, even*

25A. Drill

- Conjugate in six indicative active tenses: *video, sum, vulnerō, custōdiō, legō*.
- Decline fully in the sing.: *mūsica, dilūcūlum, oculus*.
in the plural: *hortus, castra, somnium*.
- Give the principal parts of *perveniō, gerō, sum, maneō* and *vocō*.
- Translate orally

erant multī agricolae

nōs nōn sumus servī

eī fuērunt magistrī

you (pl.) are Romans

73

the messengers will be good

pigrī erunt

prīmus eris

aeger fueram

we were not ill

73

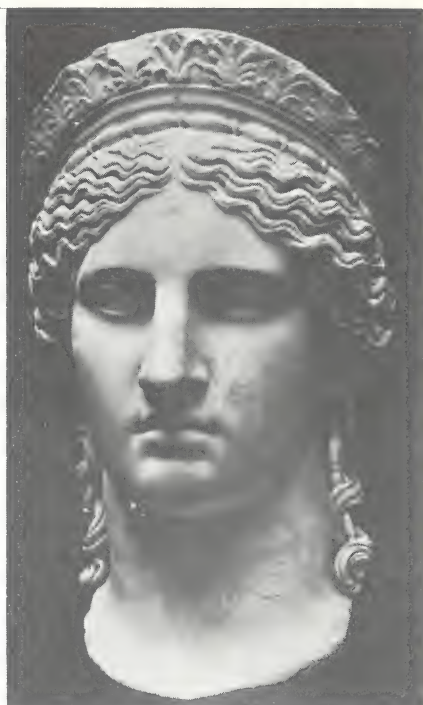
the gods were angry

nuntius es

nuntiī estis

bonum est

Juno (Hera), Ludovisi Museum, Rome
— “Fot. Alinari”



25B. Read, following the instructions of Unit 14B.

CLASSICAL GODS AND GODDESSES

The Greeks and the Romans showed great respect for their gods and goddesses. They were regarded as immortal beings, and mortals (humans) aimed at appeasing them and winning their favour.

Vesta was the Roman goddess of the blazing hearth, worshipped in every household, while two-faced *Iānus* presided over the beginnings of all undertakings, guarding doors, gates and arches. The *Penātes* were the spirits of the store-cupboard who had their place in the *ātrium* of every early Roman house. They were regarded, like the *Larēs*, as protectors of the house.

Many gods worshipped in Rome had their counterparts in Greece, e.g. *Jupiter* in Rome was *Zeus* in Greece.

● Iuppiter (Zeus) deōrum rēx erat. Iuppiter et Neptūnus et Plūtō erant
● frātrēs.
●

After his victory over the Titans *Jupiter* appointed his brothers *Neptune* (*Poseidōn*) and *Plūtō* (*Hades*) over the sea and the Underworld respectively, while he himself remained god of the sky and the heavens, sending out his lightning and thunderbolts at will. *Juno* (*Hera*), queen of the gods, was the goddess of women and children and protector of marriage and child-birth.

● Venus (Aphrodite) amōris dea erat. Venus dea pulchra erat. Minerva
● (Athēne) dea sapientiae et scientiae et audaciae erat. Aurōra dilūculi dea bella
● erat. Proserpina (Persephonē) regina Inferōrum erat.

Cupid (Erōs), represented as a little winged archer, mischievously shot his golden arrows at men and women to excite love.

Mercurius (Hermes) erat nūntius deōrum. Mars (Ares) belli deus erat. Victōriam in pugnā dedit. Vulcānus (Hephaestus) arma fabricāvit et sociōs armāvit.

Cerēs (Dēmēter) was the goddess of the harvest. *Diāna (Artemis)* was associated with the hunt, the woods and wild nature.

Apollō mūsicae operam dedit; sacer erat etiam poētis. Morpheus somniōrum deus erat. Bacchus (Dionysus) erat deus vinī. Saturnus deus agriculturae erat.

The Romans believed that Jupiter had his abode on the Capitoline Hill, and for that reason a temple was erected there in his honour.

In Graeciā deī deaeque in Olympō habitābant. Deī atque deae numquam fuērunt aegri.



Mount Olympus (south side)

— Photo Royal Hellenic Embassy

They often rewarded the good, but punished the bad.

Ad terram saepe vēnērunt; Italiae et Graeciae incolās multa docuērunt.

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of **Unit 25B** (Card 53) and check your work.

1. Who was the god of dreams?
2. Who was the goddess of love?
3. Where did the gods and goddesses live in Greece?

25C. Answer and/or translate

1. Is the adjective used (a) predicatively, or (b) attributively in the sentence <i>Oppidum magnum est?</i>	
2. Is <i>magnum</i> (a) the subject, (b) the object, or (c) the complement of the copulative verb in (1)?	1. Predicatively (a) 95
3. Which complement has to agree with the subject in gender, number and case when used with <i>sum?</i> (a) the noun complement, or (b) the adjective complement?	2. Complement (c) 95
4. Does the adjective agree with the masculine or feminine noun in a compound subject of m. and f.?	3. Adjective complement (b) 97
5. Did the Romans regard their gods as (a) immoral, or (b) immortal?	4. Masculine 98
<i>Translate</i> 6. You are not a slave.	5. Immortal (b) U 25B par. 1
7. You were not slaves.	6. (Tū) nōn es servus. 7 14 73 99d 96
8. The walls are high.	7. (Vōs) nōn fuistis servī. 7 14 94d 99d
9. The Romans will be happy.	8. Mūrī altī sunt. 7 45a 97 99c 94a
10. There were many angry Romans on the island.	9. Rōmānī laetī erunt. 7 45a 97 99c 94c
11. The boys are messengers.	10. Erant Rōmānī multī et 99a 94b 7 45a (97 īrātī in insulā. 61b) 35 37

12. They will have been angry.	11. Pueri sunt nuntii. 7 51b 94a 96 99b
13. Your son is big; my son is small.	12. Ei irāti fuerint. 79 97 99c 94f
	13. Tuus filius magnus est; 41b 7 97 95 94a meus filius parvus est. 41b 39a 7 45a 97 95 99c



Apollo, Archeological Museum, Venice
— Photo "Museo Archeologico Venezia"

25D. *Translate into Latin*

1. There are many sailors in the camp of the Romans.
2. Bacchus was not the god of war; *he* was the god of wine.
3. The wall of your town is high; our gates are big.
4. The Gauls were our allies in that war.
5. Claudius is a good slave; you (sing.) are a bad slave.
6. We were angry, for (*enim*) their friends had sent a messenger to Marcus in Italy.

****** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card** of Unit 25D (Card 54) and check your work.

25E. Write two Latin sentences of your own, using the copulative verb *sum* in different ways.

25F. **Extracts** have been included under *Appendix A8* for reading outside teaching time.

TEST 5

1. Who defeated the Romans at the river Allia in 390 B.C.?	(1)
2. Which Roman commander sacrificed his life to enable the Romans to record a victory against the Latini in 340 B.C.?	(1)
3. Which Roman tribune killed a giant Gaul in a duel in 349 B.C.?	(1)
4. Who was the Roman goddess of wisdom?	(1)
5. To which Roman god was the temple on the Capitoline Hill dedicated?	(1)
6. In which letter does a fourth conjugation verb have its present stem ending?	(1)
7. Which mood do we use in Latin to express a direct positive command?	(1)
8. Can the imperative take an object?	(1)
9. Can the copulative verb <i>sum</i> take an object?	(1)
10. What does the copulative verb <i>sum</i> need to complete the sentence?	(1) (10)
<i>Translate</i>	
11. <i>at Verona</i> <i>at Delphi</i> <i>to Verona</i> <i>in the first year</i>	<i>from Verona</i> <i>in Italy</i> <i>with us</i> <i>15th October</i> <i>out of the camp</i> <i>for many years</i>
	(10)
12. Although many gods and goddesses used to live on Olympus, we have never seen them.	(10)
13. He had said those words to me.	(4)
14. When he arrived at the camp, he ordered the slaves to guard the baggage.	(8)
15. Because their slaves were ill, we did not teach them music yesterday.	(10)
16. If we fortify the town well, the Gauls will not gain a victory with weapons.	(9)
17. You, Valerius, ought to wage war against the Latini.	(7)
18. Come with me to Alba Longa, my friends, for (<i>enim</i>) Alba Longa is a beautiful town.	(10)

19. Help the lazy slaves to carry the sailor's baggage, my son.	(8)
20. He wrote a book on (about) the Sabine War.	(5)
21. While we hastened (<i>festinō</i>) to the fort of the Romans, the Gauls suddenly attacked us.	(9)
TOTAL: 100	

** Ask your teacher for the **Control Card of Test 5** (Card 55) and check your work.

APPENDIX A

1. An Extract from Livy — Unit 18

Translate (a) and (b) below:

(a) Ascanius Aeneae filius erat.

(b) Oppidum condunt. Aeneas ab nomine uxoris Lavinium appellat.

Ab Urbe Condita, Liber 1

You have now read your first passage in original Latin, written by *Titus Livius*, a Roman historian.

2. Who was Publius Vergilius Maro? — Unit 18

Born near Mantua in 70 B.C., Vergil was the famous writer of the Roman epic, the *Aeneid*. After studying at Cremona, Milan, Naples and Rome, Vergil started writing poetry. On account of his exceptional ability he was admitted to the literary circle of Emperor Augustus and Maecenas, the patrons of art and literature. Much of his work was written on his farm in Campania which had been given to him by Maecenas, the Emperor's chief councillor.



Vergil's tomb in Naples

— "Fot. Alinari"

Apart from the *Aeneid*, Vergil wrote the *Eclogae* (*Eclogues*), depicting the life of the Latin herdsman, and the *Georgica* (*Georgics*), a patriotic and poetic treatise on the work of a farmer.

Vergil died in 19 B.C. and was buried in Naples where his tombstone is still visited by many tourists.

Read from Vergil's *Aeneid* how Aeneas left Troy:

vix prima inceperat aestas,
et pater Anchises dare fatis vela iubebat,
litora cum patriae lacrimans portusque relinquo
et campos ubi Troia fuit.

Aeneidos 111, 8 — 11

Scarcely had the opening summer dawned and my father Anchises gave command to spread our canvas to the breeze, when I, in tears, left the shores and havens of my country, and the plains where Troy once stood.

3. Who was Titus Livius? — Unit 19

Livius was a Roman historian who wrote the *Ab Urbe Condita*, a history of Rome in 142 books. Of these, however, only 35 have come down to us, viz. Books 1 — 10 and 21 — 45.

Livius was born in Padua in 59 B.C. and died in 17 A.D. Like Vergil, his literary genius brought him to the notice of Emperor Augustus.



The “Loggia Amulea” in Padua. This town was the birthplace of Livy

—Photo by permission “Museo Civico di Padova”.

As a historian Livius does not display the desired impartiality in his work. Nor did he make the best use of the available sources and geographical data of his day. Nevertheless, his work is of great value and he has fascinated students of Latin through the ages by means of his charming style.

In his *Ab Urbe Condita*, Liber 1, Livius describes in detail the sensitivity of Romulus with regard to his walls. Having killed Remus on account of his contempt for his walls, he is reported to have said,

‘sic deinde quicumque alius transiliet moenia mea.’

“So then perish whosoever else shall leap over my walls.”

In the following sentence Livy explains that the founded city (referring to Rome) was named after its founder:

condita urbs conditoris nomine appellata.

4. Who was Eutropius? — Unit 20

Let us make the acquaintance of another Roman historian, viz. Eutropius who lived approximately 308 — 378 A.D. During the reign of the Emperor Valens, Eutropius wrote a brief history of Rome under the little *Breviarii Ab Urbe Condita*. This work consists of ten books and covers the period 753 B.C. to 363 A.D.

Eutropius employed a simple and easy-flowing style, but he never reached the heights of Roman writers like Cicero, Caesar and Tacitus.

Eutropius also described the founding of Rome by Romulus. Determine what the writer referred to in the following extract:

Tum, cum uxores ipse et populus suus non haberent, invitavit ad spectaculum ludorum vicinas urbi Romae nationes atque earum virgines rapuit.

Breviarii 1.2

tum, then
cum, since
earum, their

ipse, he himself
populus suus, his people

5. Tarpeia's Treachery — Unit 20

The Reward of Treason

Tarpeia, daughter of *Tarpeius* (governor of Rome under Romulus) undertook to open the gates of Rome to the Sabines in exchange for what they wore on their left arms, viz. their golden bracelets. The Sabine king, *Tatius*, agreed, but the results were disastrous for *Tarpeia*.

Sabini hastis longis et gladiis acutis Rōmam oppugnāvērunt. Rōmāni autem fortiter pugnāvērunt.

Tarpēia, Tarpēii filia, populum Rōmānum prōdere in animō habuit, nam aurum maximē amāvit.

"Give me what you are wearing on your left arms," she said to the Sabines, "and I shall assist you in taking Rome." The Sabines agreed.

Itaque Tarpēia noctū ad portās contendit; portās aperuit. Sabini Rōmam intrāvērunt; multōs Rōmānōs occidērunt.

The Sabines took some booty, but they were driven out. As they left the city, they passed *Tarpeia* who was waiting for her reward.

Tatius ubi puellam vidit, armillam auream et scūtum in Tarpēiam coniēcit. Deinde ceteri Sabini scūta in Tarpēiam coniēcērunt. Hōc modō puellam improbam necāvērunt.

Rōmāni locum 'Tarpēium saxum' appellāvērunt.

From this rock the Romans hurled down criminals in order to kill them.

** A Control Card is available for Appendix A5 (Card 44)

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia*, the girl who betrayed Rome

Tarpēius, -i, m., *Tarpeius*, father of *Tarpeia*

Tatius, -i, m., *Tatius*, king of the Sabines

longus, -a, -um, long

acūtus, -a, -um, sharp

populus, -i, m., the people

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (3), betray

aurum, -i, n., gold

noctū, in the night

aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertum (4), open

intrō, (1) enter

armilla, -ae, f., bracelet

aureus, -a, -um, golden

scūtum, -i, n., shield

coniēcō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (3), throw

hōc modō, in this way

improbus, -a, -um, wicked, bad

locus, -i, m., place

saxum, -i, n., rock



The Tarpeian Rock seen from the south side

— "Foto ENIT ROMA"



"Hermes taught her flattery and guile," Head of Hermes by the famous Greek architect, Praxiteles, in the Olympic Museum, Greece

— Photo Royal Hellenic Embassy

6. Pandora's Box — Unit 23

The Greek poet, Hesiod, described Pandora as the first woman on earth. At the request of Jupiter Pandora was made by Vulcan, the smith of the gods, out of clay. The goddess Athene breathed life into her, while Hermes taught her flattery and guile. The rest of the gods endowed her with every necessary charm — hence *Pandōra*, meaning “gifted.”

This woman Jupiter offered to Prometheus (Fore-thought) to punish (!) him for taking fire from heaven and giving it to the mortals. Prometheus foresaw the trouble she would bring and refused the “gift.” Epimetheus (After-thought) then married her.

Iuppiter Pandōrae arcam dederat, sed eam arcam aperire prohibuērat.
Eam *Epimētheō* arcam dare iusserat.

Multōs annōs arcam in casā custōdīvērunt. Pandōra ‘Arcam aperire dēbēmus’ saepe dixit. ‘Iuppiter nōs *gemmās* pulchrās in arcā *fortasse cēlāvit*.’ Epimētheus autem *recūsāvit*, quod timuit.

One day, while Epimetheus worked in the fields, Pandora could restrain her curiosity no longer, and she opened the box.

Pandōra ubi arcam aperuit, *gemmās* nōn vidit. *Morbus et miseriae et mala* ēvolāvērunt; virōs et *fēminās* et liberōs *vexāvērunt*.

Epimētheus simulatque virōs aegrōs vidit, ad casam *cucurrit*. Ubi ad casam pervēnit, ad arcam contendit. Epimētheus ‘Arca’ inquit ‘*vacua* est.’

But the box was not altogether empty.

‘Spēs’ mansit. Epimētheus Pandōram pūnivit. Pandōra deinde ‘*Spēs*’ inquit ‘*populum* mala vincere adiuvābit.’

** A Control Card is available for Appendix A6 (Card 50)

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*

Pandōra, -ae, f., *Pandora*

arca, -ae, f., *box (of wood)*

aperiō, -ire, -ui, *apertum* (4), *open*

Epimētheus, -i, m., *Epimetheus (After-thought)*

gemma, -ae, f., *jewel*

fortasse (adv.), *perhaps*

cēlō (1) + 2 acc. (thing concealed and person from whom), *conceal, hide*

morbus, -i, m., *disease*

miser, -a, -um, *miserable, wretched*

miseria, -ae, f., *misery, affliction, grief*

recūsō (1), *refuse*

malum, -i, n., *evil*

fēmina, -ae, f., *woman*

vexō (1), *annoy, vex*

currō, -ere, *cucurri*, *cursum* (3), *run*

vacuus, -a, -um, *empty, void*

spēs, *spēs*, f., *hope*

populus, -i, m., *the people*

7. Extracts — Unit 24

(a) LIBER PROVERBIORUM

Caput 1: 8 Audi, fili mi, *disciplinam patris tui*.

1:11 Si dixerint: Veni nobiscum

2:11 Consilium custodiet te, et *prudentia* servabit te.

3: 5 Habe *fiduciam* in Domino.

4: 1 Audite, filii, *disciplinam patris*

4:10 Audi, fili mi, et *suscipe* verba mea

7: 1 Fili mi, custodi *sermone*s meos

7: 2 Serva *mandata* mea

7:24 Nunc ergo, fili mi, audi me et *attende* verbis oris mei

24:21 Time Dominum, mi fili



Michael Angelo's "David" in the Academic Gallery, Florence

— "Foto ENIT ROMA"

caput, -itis, n., head (chapter)
disciplina, -ae, f., instruction, teaching
pater, -tris, m., father
prudentia, -ae, f., wisdom, understanding, discretion
fiducia, -ae, f., trust, confidence
suscipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3), receive, undertake

sermō, -ōnis, m., talk, discussion, (commandment)
mandātum, -ī, n., order, command, commandment
ergō, (adv.), therefore, so then
attendō, -ere, -dī, -tum (3), attend to
ōs, ōris, n., mouth

(b) PHAEDRUS: THE WOLF AND THE DOG

'Veni ergo mecum'.

Phaedrus was a Greek slave in Rome who wrote a series of *Fables* in iambic verse.

8. Extracts — Unit 25

(a) Vos estis *sal* terrae

Matthaei 5:13

(b) Vos estis *lux mundi*

Matthaei 5:14

(c) Non est sapientia, non est *prudencia*, non est *consilium* contra Dominum.

Proverbiorum 21:30

(d) Dic sapientiae: *soror* mea es.

Proverbiorum 7:4

sal, salis, m., salt (also n.)
lux, lucis, f., light
mundus, -ī, m., the world (earth)

prudentia, -ae, f., understanding, discretion, wisdom
cōsilium, -iī, n., plan, counsel
soror, -ōris, f., sister

②
③
④

(e) Equus *Alexandri regis nomine Bucephalus* fuit.

Aulus Gellius: *Bucephalus*

Alexander, -dri, m., *Alexander, king of Macedonia*

rēx, rēgis, m., king
nōmine, by name



Alexander the Great, Louvre

— Photo "Musée du Louvre"

Aulus Gellius

In a country house near Athens Aulus Gellius (117 — 180 A.D.) wrote the *Noctes Atticae* (*Attic Nights*), a variety of anecdotes and discussions on various subjects. Gellius quoted freely from other authors and thus assisted in preserving fragments which would otherwise have been lost.

APPENDIX B

NOUNS: FIRST DECLENSION

Case	Singular	Plural
<i>Nominative</i>	mēnsa (f.) a table	mēnsae tables
<i>Vocative</i>	mēnsa O table	mēnsae O tables
<i>Accusative</i>	mēnsam table	mēnsās tables
<i>Genitive</i>	mēnsae of a table the table's	mēnsārum of tables, the tables'
<i>Dative</i>	mēnsae to, for a table	mēnsis to, for tables
<i>Ablative</i>	mēnsā by, with, from a table	mēnsis by, with, from tables

NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION

Case	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	servus (m.)	servi slaves	magister (m.)	magistrī teachers
<i>Voc.</i>	serve	servi	magister	magistrī
<i>Acc.</i>	servum	servōs	magistrum	magistrōs
<i>Gen.</i>	servi	servōrum	magistrī	magistrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	servō	servis	magistrō	magistris
<i>Abl.</i>	servō	servis	magistrō	magistris
<i>Nom.</i>	bellum (n.)	bella wars	puer (m.)	puerī boys
<i>Voc.</i>	bellum	bella	puer	puerī
<i>Acc.</i>	bellum	bella	puerum	puerōs
<i>Gen.</i>	belli	bellōrum	puerī	puerōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bellō	bellis	puerō	pueris
<i>Abl.</i>	bellō	bellis	puerō	pueris

ADJECTIVES: FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Voc.</i>	bone	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
<i>Acc.</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
<i>Gen.</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Abl.</i>	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonis	bonis	bonis
<i>Nom.</i>	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
<i>Voc.</i>	niger	nigra	nigrum	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
<i>Acc.</i>	nigrum	nigram	nigrum	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
<i>Gen.</i>	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō	nigris	nigris	nigris
<i>Abl.</i>	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō	nigris	nigris	nigris

PERSONAL PRONOUNS: *DECLENSION OF EGO, NOS, TU, VOS*

Case	First Person		Second Person	
	Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego I</i>	<i>nōs we</i>	<i>tū you (s.)</i>	<i>vōs you (pl.)</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrī or nostrum</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>vestrī or vestrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE AND PRONOUN: *IS, EA, ID*

He, she, it; that

Case	Singular			Plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (iī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	—	—	—	—	—	—
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>ēius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD ACTIVE

Conjugation	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	Second Person	Second Person
1	<i>amā love (you s.)</i>	<i>amāte love (you pl.)</i>
2	<i>monē advise (you s.)</i>	<i>monēte advise (you pl.)</i>
3	<i>rege rule (you s.)</i>	<i>regite rule (you pl.)</i>
4	<i>audī hear (you s.)</i>	<i>audite hear (you pl.)</i>

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS:

PRESENT STEM TENSES

Conjugation	Person	PRESENT TENSE	IMPERFECT TENSE	FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE
1		<i>I love, am lov- ing, do love</i>	<i>I was loving_λ used to love</i>	<i>I shall love, shall be loving</i>
	Sing. 1	amō	amābam	amābō
	2	amās	amābās	amābis
	3	amat	amābat	amābit
	Pl. 1	amāmus	amābāmus	amābimus
	2	amātis	amābātis	amābitis
	3	amant	amābant	amābunt
2		<i>I advise, etc.</i>	<i>I was advising</i>	<i>I shall advise</i>
	Sing. 1	moneō	monēbam	monēbō
	2	monēs	monēbās	monēbis
	3	monet	monēbat	monēbit
	Pl. 1	monēmus	monēbāmus	monēbimus
	2	monētis	monēbātis	monēbitis
	3	monent	monēbant	monēbunt
3		<i>I rule, etc.</i>	<i>I was ruling</i>	<i>I shall rule</i>
	Sing. 1	regō	regēbam	regam
	2	regis	regēbās	regēs
	3	regit	regēbat	reget
	Pl. 1	regimus	regēbāmus	regēmus
	2	regitis	regēbātis	regētis
	3	regunt	regēbant	regent
4		<i>I hear, etc.</i>	<i>I was hearing</i>	<i>I shall hear</i>
	Sing. 1	audiō	audiēbam	audiam
	2	audīs	audiēbās	audiēs
	3	audit	audiēbat	audiet
	Pl. 1	audīmus	audiēbāmus	audiēmus
	2	auditis	audiēbātis	audiētis
	3	audiunt	audiēbant	audient

INDICATIVE ACTIVE MOOD

PERFECT STEM TENSES

Person	PERFECT TENSE	PLUPERFECT TENSE	FUTURE PERFECT TENSE
	<i>I have loved</i> <i>I loved</i>	<i>I had loved</i> <i>I had been loving</i>	<i>I shall have loved</i> <i>I shall have been loving</i>
Sing. 1	amāvi	amāveram	amāverō
2	amāvisti	amāverās	amāveris
3	amāvit	amāverat	amāverit
Pl. 1	amāvimus	amāverāmus	amāverimus
2	amāvistis	amāverātis	amāveritis
3	amāvērunt or amāvēre	amāverant	amāverint
	<i>I have advised</i> <i>I advised</i>	<i>I had advised</i>	<i>I shall have advised</i>
Sing. 1	monui	monueram	monuerō
2	monuisti	monuerās	monueris
3	monuit	monuerat	monuerit
Pl. 1	monuimus	monuerāmus	monuerimus
2	monuistis	monuerātis	monueritis
3	monuērunt or monuēre	monuerant	monuerint
	<i>I have ruled</i> <i>I ruled</i>	<i>I had ruled</i>	<i>I shall have ruled</i>
Sing. 1	rēxi	rēxeram	rēxerō
2	rēxisti	rēxerās	rēxeris
3	rēxit	rēxerat	rēxerit
Pl. 1	rēximus	rēxerāmus	rēxerimus
2	rēxistis	rēxerātis	rēxeritis
3	rēxērunt or rēxēre	rēxerant	rēxerint
	<i>I have heard</i> <i>I heard</i>	<i>I had heard</i>	<i>I shall have heard</i>
Sing. 1	audivi	audiveram	audiverō
2	audivisti	audiverās	audiveris
3	audivit	audiverat	audiverit
Pl. 1	audivimus	audiverāmus	audiverimus
2	audivistis	audiverātis	audiveritis
3	audivērunt or audivēre	audiverant	audiverint

THE COPULATIVE VERB SUM

INDICATIVE MOOD

Person	PRESENT TENSE	IMPERFECT TENSE	FUTURE SIMPLE TENSE
Sing. 1	<i>I am</i> sum	<i>I was, used to be</i> eram	<i>I shall be</i> erō
2	es	erās	eris
3	est	erat	erit
Pl. 1	sumus	erāmus	erimus
2	estis	erātis	eritis
3	sunt	erant	erunt
?	P E R F E C T T E N S E	P L U P E R F E C T T E N S E	F U T U R E P E R F E C T T E N S E
Sing. 1	<i>I was, have been</i> fui	<i>I had been</i> fueram	<i>I shall have been</i> fuerō
2	fuisti	fuerās	fueris
3	fuit	fuerat	fuerit
Pl. 1	fuius	fuerāmus	fuerimus
2	fuistis	fuerātis	fueritis
3	fuērunt or fuēre	fuerant	fuerint

GENERAL VOCABULARY

LATIN — ENGLISH

A

ā, ab (prep. + abl.), *by, from, away from*, VI9
abdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum (3), *carry off*
Acca Lārentia, f., wife of Faustulus who brought up Romulus and Remus, UI9
accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (3), *receive*
Achilles, -is, m., Achilles, a Greek hero of the Trojan War, son of Peleus and Thetis, U15
acūtus, -a, -um, sharp, R59
ad (prep. + acc.), *to, towards, near*, R21, 22
adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum (1) + inf., *help, assist*, R46
adspiciō, (aspiciō), -ere, -spexī, -spectum (3), *look at, watch*
aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *build*
aeger, -gra, -grum, sick, ill, R76
Aenēās, -ae, m., Aeneas, mythical ancestor of the Romans, R66
Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa, U18
Āfrica Meridiāna, -ae -ae, South Africa, U2
agricola, -ae, m., farmer
agricultura, -ae, f., agriculture
āla, -ae, f., wing
Alba Longa, -ae -ae, f., Alba Longa, a Latin town built by Ascanius, U19
albus, -a, -um, white, R59
Alexander, -dri, m., Alexander, king of Macedonia, App. A8
altus, -a, -um, high, deep, R59
ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *walk*
amica, -ae, f., friend (fem.)
amicus, -i, m., friend, R45a
amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *love, like*
amor, -ōris, m., love
Amūlius, -i, m., Amulius, king of Alba Longa, U19, R64
Anchisēs, -ae, m., Anchises, father of Aeneas, U18
Angela, -ae, f., Angela
animus, -i, m., mind, feeling, attention, R45a;
in animō habēre, intend, have in mind
annus, -i, m., year, R45a
Antōnius, -i, m., Anthony, R64
aperiō, -ire, -uī, apertum (4), *open*
Aphrodite, Greek goddess of love and beauty, U25
Apollō, Roman and Greek god of music, medicine and art
appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *call, name*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + dat. or ad + acc., *approach*
Aprilis, -is, -e, of April, U10
apud (prep. + acc.), *among, near, at, at the house of*, R21
aqua, -ae, f., water
arca, -ae, f., box (of wood)
Ares, Greek god of war, U25
Ariadnē, -ēs, f., Ariadne, daughter of Minos, king of Crete, U13
arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms, weapons, R89
armilla, -ae, f., bracelet
armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *arm, equip*
arrogantia, -ae, f., arrogance
Artemis, Greek goddess of wild life and the hunt
Ascānius, -i, m., Ascanius, son of Aeneas, U18
Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens
Athēne, Greek goddess of wisdom and art
atque (conj.), *and*
attendō, -ere, -dī, -tum (3), *attend to*
audācia, -ae, f., courage, daring, boldness, bravery
audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *hear*
Augustus, -a, -um, of August (from Emperor Augustus)
Aulus Gellius, famous for his Noctes Atticae, App. A8
aureus, -a, -um, golden, R59
Aurōra, -ae, Roman goddess of the dawn, U25
aurum, -i, n., gold, R51a
autem (conj., second word), *but, however*
autoraeda, -ae, automobile, car
auxilium, -iī, n., assistance, help, aid, R51a
Aventinus, -i, m., the Aventine, one of the hills of Rome
avis, -is, f., bird

B

Bacchus, -i, m., Roman god of wine, U25
beātus, -a, -um, happy, R59
Belgica, -ae, f., Belgium
bellum, -i, n., war, R51a; **bellum gerere, wage war**
hellus, -a, -um, beautiful, R59
bene (adv.), *well*
birota, -ae, bicycle
bis, twice
bonus, -a, -um, good, R59

Britanni, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons*, U7
 Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain*, U3
 Bucephalus, -i, m., *Bucephalus, the horse of Alexander the Great*, App. A8

C

C, 100; CC, 200
 cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum (3), *fall*
 caelum, -i, n., *sky, heavens*
 Caesar, -aris, m., *Caesar*, U6
 Calēdonia, -ae, f., *Scotland*
 Calendae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Calends, first day of the month; also Kalendae*, U10
 callidus, -a, -um, *crafty, shrewd, clever*, R59
 Camillus, -i, m., *Camillus, a Roman military leader who took Veii and freed Rome from the Gauls*, U24
 Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania*
 cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *sing*
 capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum (3), *take, seize; cōnsilium capere, to make a plan, devise a scheme*
 Capitōlium, -ii, n., *the Capitol, where the temple of Jupiter was built; the Capitoline Hill*
 caput, -itis, n., *head (chapter)*
 Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage*
 casa, -ae, f., *cottage*
 castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*, R89; *castra pōnere, pitch camp*
 castrum, -i, n., *fort*, R89, 51a; *castra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp*
 cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + 2 acc., *hide, conceal*, R58
 Cerēs, -eris, f., *Ceres, Roman goddess of the harvest*
 cēteri, -ae, -a, *the rest, remaining*, R59
 circā (adv.), *about, more or less*
 circum (prep. + acc.), *around, round*, R56
 clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *shout, cry out*
 Claudius, -i, m., *Claudius*, R64
 claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum (3), *close, shut*
 clēmentia, -ae, f., *mercy, clemency*
 collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *place, lay, set, station*
 columba, -ae, f., *dove; columba internuntia, carrier pigeon*
 committō, -ere, -misi, -misum (3), *entrust; proelium committere, engage in battle, join battle*
 complēō, -ēre, -plēvi, -plētum (2) + abl. of thing, *fill up; nāvēs complēre, to man the ships; mūrōs complēre, man the walls*
 condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum (3), *found, establish*
 coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (3), *throw*
 cōnsilium, -ii, n., *plan, counsel, advice*, R51a; *cōnsilium dare, suggest a plan; cōnsilium capere, make a plan, devise a scheme.*

cōnsistō, -ere, -stiti, (-stitum), 3, *halt, take one's stand*
 cōstituō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum (3) + inf., *decide, determine*
 cōsulō, -ere, -ui, -sultum (3), *consult; with dative: consult the interests of*
 contendō, -ere, -di, -tum (3), *hasten, march rapidly*
 contentus, -a, -um, *contented, satisfied*, R59
 contrā, (prep. + acc.), *against*, R21
 convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *call together*
 Corinthus, -i, f., *Corinth, a Greek city*
 Cornēlius, -i, m., *Cornelius*, R64
 corpus, -oris, n., *body*
 corvus, -i, m., *raven*, R45a
 Cremōna, -ae, f., *Cremona, an Italian city*
 Crēta, -ae, f., *Crete, kingdom of Minos*
 Croesus, -i, m., *Croesus, king of Lydia*, U21
 culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *blame, accuse, reprove, find fault with*
 cum, 1. prep. + abl., *with, together with*, R78; 2. conj., *since*
 Cupido, -inis, m., *Cupid, the boy-god of love, son of Venus*, U25
 cūr (interrogative adv.), *why?*
 cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *care for, look after*
 currō, -ere cucurri, cursum (3), *run*
 custodiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (4), *guard, keep watch*
 Cŷrus, -i, m., *Cyrus, a Persian king*, U21

D

Daedalus, -i, m., *Daedalus, father of Icarus who built the labyrinth and made wings for himself and his son*, U13
 dē (prep. + abl.), *about, concerning*, R55
 dea, -ae, f., *goddess (dat. and abl. pl. -abus)*
 dēbeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2) + inf., *ought, owe*, R46
 decem, ten, R84, 85
 December, -bris, -bre, of *December, originally the tenth month of the year*, U10
 decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*, R59
 Decius, -i, m., *Publius Decius Mus, who gave his life for a Roman victory over the Latins*, U23
 dēfendō, -ere, -di, -sum (3), *defend*
 deinde (adv.), *then, next*
 dēleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum (2), *destroy*
 Delphī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Delphi, seat of the oracle in Greece*, U21
 delphinus, -i, m., *dolphin*
 Dēmēter, *Greek goddess of the harvest*, U25
 dēnārii, see *librae*
 dēportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *carry off*
 dēsiderō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *long for, wish for*
 deus, -i, m., *god (declension irregular; see Book 2)*
 Diāna, -ae, f., *Diana, Roman goddess of the hunt, wild life and the woods*, U25

dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum (3), say, tell, R67;
 imperative sing. **dic, say, tell; dic mihi,**
tell me; mirābile dictū, wonderful to relate
dilūculum, -i, n., dawn
Dionysus, Greek god of wine, U25
discēdō, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (3), depart, go away
discimus, we learn (from disco)
disciplina, -ae, f., instruction, teaching
discipulus, -i, m., pupil, scholar
discō, -ere, didici (3), learn
diū (adv.), for a long time, long
dō, dare, dedi, datum (1), give (with direct and
 indirect object, R30); **cōsiliū dare, suggest**
a plan; operam dare + dat., pay attention to
doceō, -ēre, -ui, doctum (2) + two acc., teach,
 R47
doctor, -ōris, m., teacher, doctor of learning
dominus, -i, m., lord, master, R45a
dōnum, -i, n., gift, present, R51a
Dōra, -ae, f., Dora
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum (3), lead; imperative
 sing., **duc**
dum (conj.), while, R57, 44
duo, -ae, -o, two, R84 — 86
duodecim, twelve

E

ē, ex (prep. + abl.), out of, from, R48
ea, see is, ea, id, R79
ecce! (adv.), behold! lo! see!
ego, I, R71
enim (conj., second or third word), for
Epēios, -i, m., Epeios, builder of the wooden
horse by means of which Troy was taken, R16
Epimētheus, -i, m., Epimetheus (After-thought),
 App. A6
equus, -i, m., horse, R45a
erant, they were, see sum, R94
erat, he was, see sum, R94
ergō (adv.), therefore, so then
Erōs, Greek god of love, identified with the
Roman Cupid
errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), wander, roam, stray;
err, be mistaken
ērudīō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (4), instruct, teach
est, he, she, it is, see sum, R94
et (conj.), and
etiam (adv.), also, even
Eutropius, -i, m., Flavius Eutropius, a Roman
historian of the fourth century A.D.
ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), fly out, fly away
ex (prep. + abl.), out of, from, R48
exaedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), build, build up,
erect
exclāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), exclaim, cry out
expellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum (3), expel, drive out
expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), take by storm
extrā (prep. + acc.), outside, beyond, R21

F

fābella, -ae, f., a little story; ridicula fābella, a
joke
Fabius, -i, m., Fabius, R64
fabricō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), make, form
fābula, -ae, f., story, tale
faciam, see iter
Faustulus, -i, m., Faustulus, the herdsman who
saved Romulus and Remus and brought them
up
Februārius, -a, -um, of February (from februō,
to purify; purification ceremonies were held
in the second half of this month)
fēmina, -ae, f., woman
fenestra, -ae, f., window
festinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), hasten
fidūcia, -ae, f., trust, confidence
filia, -ae, f., daughter (dat. and abl. pl. -ābus)
filius, -ii, m., son, R64
finitimus, -a, -um, neighbouring, adjacent, R59
flēō, -ēre, flēvi, flētum (2), weep, lament
fluit, from fluo, to flow
flūmen, -inis, n., river
fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxum (3), flow
fortasse (adv.), perhaps
fortiter (adv.), bravely
frāter, -tris, m., brother
frūstrā (adv.), in vain
fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), put to flight, drive
away, rout
fui, see sum, R94

G

Gabii, -ōrum, m. pl., Gabii, an ancient city of
Latium
galea, -ae, f., helmet
Gallia, -ae, f., Gaul
Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul
Gellius, Aulus Gellius, writer, famous for his
Noctes Atticae, App. A8
gemma, -ae, f., jewel
Germania, -ae, f., Germany
gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum (3), carry; bellum gerere,
wage war, carry on war
gladius, -ii, m., sword, R65, 45a
Graecia, -ae, f., Greece
Graecus, -i, m., a Greek

H

habeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2), have, hold; in animō
habēre, to have in mind, intend
habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), live, dwell
Hades, 1. Greek god of the Underworld; 2. the
Underworld, realm of the dead, U 25
hasta, -ae, f., spear
Hector, -oris, m., Hector, son of Priam, R15
Helena, -ae, f., Helen, wife of Menelaus, king
of Sparta

Henricus, -ī, m., *Henry*
 Hephaestus, *Greek god of fire and the art of the smith*
 Hera, -ae, f., *Hera, Greek queen of the gods*, U25
 herī (adv.), *yesterday*
 Hermes, *messenger of the Greek gods and god of trade*
 hic (adv.), *here*
 Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*, U1b
 hōc modō, *in this way*
 Homērus, -ī, m., *Homer, celebrated, Greek epic poet*
 honōs (honor), -ōris, m., *honour*; magnō honōre, *with great respect*
 hortus, -ī, m., *garden*, R45a

2 I (VOWEL)

īcarus, -ī, m., *Icarus, son of Daedalus*, U13
 id, see is, ea, id, R79; id est, *that is*
 īdus, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides, 13th or 15th day of the month*, U10
 īlium, -iī, n., *Ilium (Troy)*, R51a
 impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl., *baggage*, R89
 imperātor, -ōris, m., *commander*
 improbus, -a, -um, *wicked, bad*, R59
 in (prep.), 1. + acc., *into, towards, against*, R21; 2. + abl., *in, on*, R35
 incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain, doubtful*, R59
 incipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (3) + inf., *begin, commence*
 incola, -ae, c., *inhabitant*
 Inferī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Underworld, realm of the dead*, U25
 inquit, *he, she says, said*
 iniquiunt, *they say, said*
 insidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush*, R89
 insula, -ae, f., *island*
 intereā (adv.), *meanwhile*
 intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *enter*
 invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *invite*
 ipse, *he himself*
 ira, -ae, f., *anger*
 irātus, -a, -um, *angry*, R59
 is, ea, id (demonstrative adj. and pronoun), *that; he, she, it*, R79, 80; eo modo, *in that way*
 Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*
 itaque (conj. and adv.), *therefore, and so, thus, accordingly*
 iter, itineris, n., *a journey*; iter faciam, *I shall make the journey*
 iterum (adv.), *again, a second time*

I (CONSONANT)

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, (-citur), 2, *lie, lie down*
 iam (adv.), *now, already*, V18
 iānuā, -ae, f., *door*
 iānuārius, -a, -um, *of January*

iānus, -ī, n., *Janus, Roman god who presided over the beginnings of all undertakings*, U10
 iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum (2) + inf., *order, command*, R46
 iūlia, -ae, f., *Julia*
 iūlius, 1. noun, -ī, m., *Julius*; 2. adj., -a, -um, *of July (from Julius Caesar)*, U10
 iūnius, -a, -um, *of June (from a famous Roman tribe)*, U10
 iūno, -ōnis, f., *Juno, queen of the Roman gods*, U10
 iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, father of the Roman gods*, U10

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Calends, first day of the month*

L

labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *work, work hard*
 labyrinthus, -ī, m., *labyrinth, maze*, R45a
 laetus, -a, -um, *happy*, R59
 Lāocoön, -ontis, m., *Laocoon, priest of Neptune in Troy*
 Lārentālia, -ium, n., *the Larentalia, a Roman festival in honour of Acca Larentia*
 Larēs, -um, m., *the Lares, Roman domestic deities*
 Latini, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Latini, the Latins*, U23
 Latinus, -a, -um, *of the Latins, of the Latini, Latin*
 Latium, -iī, n., *Latium*, R51a, U18
 Lātōna, -ae, f., *Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana*, U8
 laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *praise*
 Lauretta, -ae, f., *Lauretta*
 Lāvinia, -ae, f., *Lavinia, wife of Aeneas*, R18
 Lāvinium, -iī, n., *Lavinium, a town founded by Aeneas and named after his wife, Lavinia*
 lavō, āre, lāvī, (lautum), 1, *wash*
 legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum (3), *read*
 liber, -brī, m., *book*, R45b; Liber Prōverbiōrum, *the Book of Proverbs*
 liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., *children*, R89
 liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *liberate, set free*
 librae, *pounds, £*; librae et solidi et dēnārii, *L. s. d., £. s. d., pounds, shillings and pence*
 ligneus, -a, -um, *wooden, made of wood*, R59
 lingua, -ae, f., *language*; lingua Latina, *the Latin language*
 Līvius, -ī, m., *Titus Livius, Livy, a Roman historian*, App. A3
 locus, -ī, m., *place*; pl. loca, -ōrum, n.
 Londinium, -iī, n., *London*, U3
 longus, -a, -um, *long*, R59
 lūdus, -ī, m., *school, game*, R45a
 lupa, -ae, f., *she-wolf*, U19
 lūx, lūcis, f., *light*, App. A8
 LXXX, 80

M

māchina, -ae, f., *machine*; per māchinam volan-
tem, by (aero) plane
magister, -trī, m., *teacher*, R45b
magistra, -ae, f., *teacher* (fem.)
magnus, -a, -um, *great, large*, R59; magnō
honorē, with great respect
Māius, -a, -um, of May
malum, 1. malum, -ī, n., *evil*; 2. mālum, -ī,
n., *apple*, R51a
malus, -a, -um, *bad*, R59
mandātum, -ī, *order, command, commandment*,
R51a
manēō, -ēre, -sī, -sum (2), *remain, stay*
Mantua, -ae, f., *Mantua, a town in northern*
Italy, near the birthplace of Vergil, App. A2
Marcus, -ī, m., *Marcus*
Maria, -ae, f., *Mary*
Marius, -ī, m., *Marius*, R64
Mars, -tis, m., *Mars, Roman god of war*, U25
Martius, -a, -um, of March (from Mars)
Matthaei, the Book of St. Matthew, App. A8
maximē (adv.), *very much, most of all*
medicus, -ī, m., *medical practitioner, medical*
doctor, R45a
Menelāus, -ī, m., *Menelaus, king of Sparta and*
husband of Helen, U14
mēnsa, -ae, f., *table*
Mercurius, -ī, m., *Mercury, messenger of the*
gods and Roman god of trade, U25
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine*, R77a
migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *move*
mīles, -itis, m., *soldier*
Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva, Roman goddess of*
wisdom and art, U25
Mīnos, -ōis, m., *Minos, king of Crete*, U13
Minōtaurus, -ī, m., *Minotaur, a Cretan monster,*
killed by Theseus
mirābilis, -is, -e, *wonderful*; mirābile dictū,
wonderful to relate
miser, -era, -erum, *miserable, wretched*; miseria,
-ae, f., *misery, affliction, grief*
mittō, -ere, misī, missum (3), *send*
modus, -ī, m., *manner, mode, measure*, R45a;
eō modō, in that way; hōc modō, in this way
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *advise, warn*
Monica, -ae, f., *Monica*
morbus, -ī, m., *disease*, R45a
Morpheus, -ēos, m., *Greek god of dreams*
mox (adv.), *soon*
multum (adv.), *much*; multum pecūniae, *much*
money
multus, -a, -um, *many*, R41a, 59
mundus, -ī, m., *the world*, R45a
mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum (4), *fortify*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall*, R45a
mūtica, -ae, f., *music*
mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) in + acc., *change into*

N

nam (conj., first word), *for*
nārrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *relate, tell, narrate*
nātio, -ōnis, f., *nation, race, people*
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor*
nāvīgium, -īi, n., *boat, ship, vessel*, R51a
nāvīgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *sail*
Neāpolis, -is, f., *Naples* (acc. Neapolim)
necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *kill*
Neptūnus, -ī, m., *Neptune, Roman god of the*
sea, U25
nesciō, -īre, -ivī (-īi), -itum (4), *not to know, to*
be ignorant of
niger, -gra, -grum, *black*, R76
Nigēria, -ae, f., *Nigeria*
noctū, at night, in the night
nōmen, -inis, n., *name*; nōmine, by name
nōn (adv.), *not*
Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Nones, 5th or 7th day*
of the month, U10
nōndum (adv.), *not yet*
nōnnumquam (nōnnunquam), adv., *sometimes*
nōs, we, R71
noster, -tra, -trum, *our*, R76
novem, *nine*, R84, 85
November, -is, -e, of November, originally the
ninth month of the year, U10
novus, -a, -um, *new*, R59
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor, king of Alba Longa*,
U19
numquam (nunquam), adv., *never*
nunc (adv.), *now*, V18
nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *announce, report*
nūntius, -īi, m., *messenger*, R65, 45a

O

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum (2), *besiege*
occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cisum (3), *kill, slay*
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *seize, hold, lay*
hold of (territory)
octō, eight, R84, 85
Octōber, -is, -e, of October, originally the eighth
month of the year, U10
oculus, -ī, m., *eye*, R45a
ōlim (adv.), *once, once upon a time, formerly*
Olympus, -ī, m., *Olympus, abode of the Greek*
gods in Thessaly
opera, -ae, f., *effort, exertion*; operam dare +
dat., *pay attention to*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town*, R51a
oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *attack*
ōra, -ae, f., *shore*
ōrāculum, -ī, n., *oracle*, R51a
ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *decorate*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth*

P

pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *pacify, make peaceful*
Padua, a town in northern Italy where Livy was born, App. A3
Palātium, -ii, n., the Palatine Hill in Rome, U19
Pandōra, -ae, f., Pandora, App. A6
Paris, -idis, m., Paris, son of Priam, king of Troy, U14
parvus, -a, -um, small, R59
pater, -tris, m., father
patria, -ae, f., fatherland
Pātroclus, -i, m., Patroclus, friend of Achilles and slain by Hector, R15
Paulus, -i, m., Paul
pecūnia, -ae, f., money; **multum pecūniae**, much money
Penātes, -ium, m., the Penates, household or family deities in Rome
Penthesilēa, -ae, f., Penthesilea, queen of the Amazons and slain by Achilles
per (prep. + acc.), through, R21; **per centum**, per 100, %
Persae, -arum, m. pl., the Persians, R21
Persephonē, Greek queen of the Underworld
pervenīō, -ire, -vēnī, -ventum (4) ad + acc., arrive at, reach
Petrus, -trī, m., Peter
Phaedrus, -i, m., Phaedrus, a writer famous for his Fables
Philippus, -i, m., Philip
philosophus, -i, m., philosopher
piger, -gra, -grum, lazy, inactive, R76
pirāta, -ae, m., pirate
Plūtō, -ōnis, m., Pluto, king of the Underworld
poēta, -ae, m., poet
pōnō, -ere, posui, positum (3), place; **castra pōnere**, pitch camp
populus, -i, m., the people, R45a
porcus, -i, m., pig, R45a
porta, -ae, f., gate, entrance
portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), carry
Poseidōn, Greek god of the sea
post (prep. + acc.), after, behind, R21; **post meridiem, p.m.**, after noon
postea (adv.), afterwards
posthac (adv.), hereafter, after this
postquam (conj.), after, R25, 34
praebeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2), show, offer
prehendō, -ere, -di, -sum (3), lay hold of, seize, grasp, catch (people)
Pretōria, -ae, f., Pretoria
Priamus, -i, m., Priam, king of Troy, U15
pridiē (adv.), the day before
primus, -a, -um, first, R59
prōdō, -ere, -didī, -itum (3), betray
proelium, -ii, n., battle, R51a; **proelium committere**, engage in battle, join battle
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2) + inf., forbid, prevent, keep off, R46

Promētheus, -i, m., Prometheus, (Fore-thought), who stole fire from the gods and gave it to the mortals, App. A6
propinquus, -a, -um, neighbouring
Proserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, daughter of Ceres and queen of the Underworld
Prōverbiōrum, see **liber**
prudentia, -ae, f., wisdom, understanding, discreation
Pūblius, see Vergilius
puella, -ae, f., girl
puer, -erī, m., boy, R51b
pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle
pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful, R76
pūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, (4), punish
pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), clean

Q

quamquam (conj.), although
quandō (interrogative adv.), when?
quattuor, four, R84, 85
-que (enclitic conj.), and
quinque, five, R84, 85
Quintilis, -is, -e (Quintilis), of July, originally the fifth month of the year
quod (conj.), because, R29
quōmodo (interrogative conj.), how?
quoque (adv.), also, (too)

R

rāna, -ae, f., frog
rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptum (3), seize, snatch (people)
recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), refuse
rēgina, -ae, f., queen
rēgnum, -i, n., kingdom, realm, R51a
regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum (3), rule, govern, direct
relinquō, -ere, -liqui, -lictum (3), leave, abandon
Remus, -i, m., Remus, twin brother of Romulus, R45a
reportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), bring back, carry back; **victōriam reportāre**, gain a victory
respondeō, -ēre, -spondi, -spōnsum (2), reply, answer
rēx, rēgis, m., king
Rhēa Silvia, -ae, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, daughter of Numitor and mother of Romulus and Remus
Rhodēsia, -ae, f., Rhodesia
rideō, -ēre, risi, risum (2), laugh, laugh at
ridicula fābella, a joke
rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + 2 acc., ask R52
rogus, -i, m., funeral pile, R45a
Rōma, -ae, f., Rome
Rōmānus, 1. Rōmānus, -i, m., a Roman;
2. Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman, of the Romans, R59

Rōmulus, -ī, m., *Romulus, founder and first king of Rome*, R45a, U19
rosa, -ae, f., *rose*
Rutuli, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Rutuli, ancient tribe of Latium*

S

Sabinī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines, the Sabini, neighbours of the Latins*, U20
Sabinus, -a, -um, *Sabine, of the Sabines*, U20
sacer, -cra, -crum, *sacred*
saepe (adv.), *often*
sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow*
sal, **salis**, m., *salt (also n.)*
saltō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *dance*
salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *greet*
salvēō, -ēre (2), *to be well in health*; **salvē**, **salvēte**, *hail! greetings!*
sapientia, -ae, f., *wisdom*
Sāturnus, -ī, m., *Roman god of planting and agriculture*
saxum, -ī, n., *rock*, R51a
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge*
sciō, -īre, **scīvi** (-īi), **scitum** (4), *know*
scribō, -ere, **scripsī**, **scriptum** (4), *write*
sculptūra, -ae, f., *sculpture*
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield*, R51a
sed (conj.), *but*
semper (adv.), *always*
sepeliō, -īre, -īvi, -pultum (4), *bury*
septem, *seven*, R84, 85
September, -is, -e, *of September, originally the seventh month of the year*, U10
sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, discussion, (commandment)*
servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *save*
servus, -ī, m., *slave*, R45a
sex, *six*, R84, 85
Sextilis, -is, -e, *of August, the original name for the month of August (originally the sixth month of the year)*, U10
sī (conj.), *if*, R34
signum, -ī, n., *signal, sign*, R51a
silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest*
Silvia, -ae, f., *Silvia*
simulac, **simulatque** (conj.), *as soon as*, R25, 34
socius, -īi, m., *ally, comrade*, R65, 45a
solidī, see **librae**
Solon, -ōnis, m., *Solon, one of the seven Wise Men of Greece*, U21
somnium, -īi, n., *a dream*, R51a
soror, -ōris, f., *sister*
Sparta, -ae, f., *Sparta*, U14
spectāculum, -ī, n., *spectacle*, R51a
spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *look at, watch*
spēs, **spēi**, f., *hope*
statim (adv.), *immediately*
statua, -ae, f., *statue*
Stella, -ae, f., *Stella*
subitō (adv.), *suddenly*

sum, **esse**, **fui** (copulative verb), *to be*, R94
sunt, *they are*, see **sum**, R94
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *overcome, defeat, conquer*
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3), *receive, undertake*
suus, -a, -um (reflex.), *his, her, its, their own*

T

tabernāculum, -ī, n., *tent*, R51a
taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *to be silent*
Talus, -ī, m., *Talus, slave of Daedalus*, U13
tamen (adv.), *however, nevertheless*
Tamesis, -is, m., *the river Thames*, U3
tandem (adv.), *at length, at last, finally*
Tanzānia, -ae, f., *Tanzania*, U2
Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia, daughter of Tarpeius who betrayed Rome to the Sabines*, App. A5
Tarpēius, -ī, m., *Tarpeius*, App. A5
Tatius, -ī, m., *Tatius, king of the Sabines*, R64, 45a
tēlorāma, -ae, *television*
terra, -ae, f., *land, country, earth*
terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *frighten, scare, terrify*
Thēseus, -ī, m., *Theseus, who killed the Cretan Minotaur*, U13
Tiberis, -is, m., *the river Tiber (acc. -im)*
timeō, -ēre, -uī (2), *fear, be afraid of*
tractō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, (1), *drag along, haul*
trēs, **trēs**, **tria**, *three*, R84 — 86
Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, U14
Trōiānus, 1. **Trōiānus**, -ī, m., *a Trojan*, 45a;
 2. **Trōiānus**, -a, -um, *Trojan, of the Trojans*, R59
tū, *you (sing.)*, R71
tum (adv.), *then*
Turnus, -ī, m., *Turnus, king of the Rutuli, killed by Aeneas*, U18
tuus, -a, -um, *your (s.)*

U

ubi, 1. conj., *when*, R25, 34; 2. interrogative adv., *where?*
Ulixēs, -is, m., *Ulysses or Odysseus, famed for his cunning and for his wanderings after the fall of Troy*, U16
unda, -ae, f., *wave*
ūnus, -a, -um, *one*, R84 — 86
urbs, **urbis**, f., *city*
uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*

V

vacuus, -a, -um, *empty, void*, R59
valdē (adv.), *very, very much*
valeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2), *to be strong*; **valē**, **valēte**, *good-bye! farewell!*

Valerius, -i, m., *M. Valerius Corvus, who, assisted by a raven, killed a giant Gaul in a duel, U24*
validus, -a, -um, *strong, sturdy, R59*
vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *ravage, devastate, lay waste*
veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum (4), *come*
Venus, -eris, f., *Venus, Roman goddess of love and beauty, U25*
Vēra, -ae, f., *Vera*
verbum, -i, n., *word*
Vergilius, -i, m., *P. Vergilius Maro, celebrated Roman poet and writer of the epic Aeneidos, App. A2*
Vērōna, -ae, f., *Verona, town of northern Italy and birthplace of the Roman poet, Catullus*
Vērōnica, -ae, f., *Veronica*
Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta, Roman goddess of the hearth and domestic life, U25*
vester, -tra, -trum, *your (pl.), R76*
Vesuvius, -ii, m., *Vesuvius, the well-known volcano in Campania at the first eruption of which Pompeii, Herculaneum and Stabiae were destroyed in 79 A.D., U23*

vetō, -āre, -uī, vetitum (1) + inf., *forbid, R46*
vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *annoy, vex*
vicinus, -a, -um, *neighbouring, nearby, near, R59*
victōria, -ae, f., *victory; victōriam reportāre, to gain a victory, conquer*
videō, -ēre, vidī, visum (2), *see*
villa, -ae, f., *farm-house*
vincō, -ere, vici, victum, (3), *conquer, defeat*
vinum, -i, n., *wine, R51a*
vir, viri, m., *man, R51b*
virgo, -inis, f., *maiden*
visitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *visit*
vīta, -ae, f., *life*
vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *avoid, escape*
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *call*
volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *fly*
vōs, you (pl.), *R71*
Vulcānus, -i, m., *Vulcan, Roman god of fire who made weapons and thunderbolts for the gods, U25*
vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1), *wound*

Z

Zambia, -ae, f., *Zambia*
Zeus, father of the gods in Greece

ENGLISH — LATIN

A

abandon, *relinquō*, -ere, -liqui, -lictum (3)
 about, 1. prep., *dē* + abl., R55; 2. adv., *circa*
 Acca Lārentia, see *Latin*
 accordingly, *itaque* (adv.)
 accuse, *culpō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 Achilles, see *Latin*
 adjacent, *finitimus*, -a, -um, R59
 advise, *moneō*, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2)
 Aeneas, see *Latin* and R66
 aeroplane, *māchina volans*; by plane, *per māchinam volantem*
 affliction, *miseria*, -ae, f.
 afraid of, to be, *timeō*, -ēre, -ui (2)
 Africa, *Āfrica*, -ae, f.
 after. 1. conj., *postquam*, R25, 34; 2. prep., *post* + acc., R21; afternoon, *post meridiem*
 after this, *posthāc* (adv.)
 afterwards, *postea* (adv.)
 again, *iterum* (adv.)
 against, *contrā* (prep. + acc.), R21; in + acc. (prep.)
 agriculture, *agricultura*, -ae, f.
 aid, *auxilium*, -ii, n., R51a
 Alba Longa, see *Latin*
 Alexander, *Alexander*, -dri, m.
 already, *iam* (adv.), V18
 also, *etiam*, *quoque* (adv.)
 although, *quamquam* (conj.)
 always, *semper* (adv.)
 ambush, *insidiae*, -arum, f. pl., R89
 among, *apud* (prep. + acc.), R21
 Amulius, see *Latin*
 Anchises, see *Latin*
 and, *et*, *atque* (conj.); -que (enclitic conj.)
 and so, *itaque* (adv.)
 Angela, *Angela*, -ae, f.
 anger, *ira*, -ae, f.
 angry, *irātus*, -a, -um
 announce, *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 annoy, *vexō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 answer, *respondeō*, -ēre, -di, -sum (2)
 Anthony, *Antōnius*, -i, m.
 Aphrodite, see *Latin*
 Appollo, see *Latin*
 apple, *mālum*, -i, n., R51a
 approach, *appropinquō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + dat. or *ad* + acc.
 April, of, *Aprilis*, -is, -e, U10
 Ares, see *Latin*
 Ariadne, see *Latin*
 arm (equip), *armō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 arms (weapons), *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl., R89

around, *circum* (prep. + acc.), R56
 arrive at, *pervenio*, -ire, -veni, -ventum (4) *ad* + acc.
 arrogance, *arrogantia*, -ae, f.
 arrow, *sagitta*, -ae, f.
 Artemis, see *Latin*
 Ascanius, see *Latin*
 ask, *rogō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + 2 acc., R52
 assist, *adiuvō*, -āre, -iāvi, -ūtum (1) + inf., R46
 assistance, *auxilium*, -ii, n., R51a
 as soon as, *simulac*, *simulatque* (conj.), R25, 34
 at, *apud* (prep. + acc.), R21
 Athene, see *Latin*
 Athens, *Athēnae*, -arum, f. pl.
 at last, *tandem* (adv.)
 at length, *tandem* (adv.)
 attack, *oppugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 attend to, *attendō*, -ere, -di, -tum (3)
 attention, *animus*, -i, m., R45a; pay attention to, *operam dare* + dat.
 at the house of, *apud* (prep. + acc.), R21
 August, of, *Augustus*, -a, -um; *Sextilis*, -is, -e, U10
 Aulus Gellius, see *Latin*
 Aurora, see *Latin*
 automobile, *autoraeda*, -ae
 Aventine, see *Latin* *Aventinus*
 avoid, *vītō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 away from, *ā*, *ab* (prep. + abl.), V19

B

Bacchus, see *Latin*
 bad, *malus*, -a, -um, R59
 baggage, *impedimenta*, -ōrum, n. pl., R89
 battle, *pugna*, -ae, f.; *proelium*, -ii, n., R51a; engage in battle, join battle, *proelium committere*
 be, to be, *sum*, *esse*, *fui*, R94
 beautiful, *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, R76; *hūius*, -a, -um, R59
 because, *quod* (conj.), R29
 before noon, *ante meridiem*
 begin, *incipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3) + inf., R46
 behind, *post* (p. , acc.), R21
 behold! *ecce!* (adv.)
 Belgium, *Belgica*, -ae, f.
 besiege, *obsideō*, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum
 betray, *prōdō*, -ere, -didī, -ditum (3)
 beyond, *extrā* (prep. + acc.)
 bicycle, *birota*, -ae
 bird, *avis*, -is, f.
 black, *niger*, -gra, -grum, R76

blame, *culpō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
boat, *nāvigium*, -ii, n., R51a
body, *corpus*, -oris, n.
boldness, *audācia*, -ae, f.
book, *liber*, -bri, m., R45b; **Book of Proverbs**,
Liber Prōverbiōrum
box (of wood), *arca*, -ae, f.
boy, *puer*, -eri, m., R51b
bracelet, *armilla*, -ae, f.
bravely, *fortiter* (adv.)
bravery, *audācia*, -ae, f.
bring back, *reportō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
Britain, *Britannia*, -ae, f.
Britons, *Britanni*, -ōrum, m. pl.
brother, *frāter*, -tris, m.
Bucephalus, see *Latin*
build, *aedificō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *exaedificō*,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
build up, *exaedificō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
bury, *sepeliō*, -īre, -īvi, -pultum (4)
but, *sed* (conj.); *autem* (conj., second word)
by, *ā*, *ab* (prep. + abl.), V19

C

Caesar, *Caesar*, -aris, m.
Calends, *Kalendae*, (*Calendae*), -ārum, f. pl.,
U10
call, *vocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *appellō*, -āre,
-āvi, -ātum (1)
call together, *convocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
Camillus, see *Latin*
camp, *castra*, -ōrum, n. pl., R89; **pitch camp**,
castra pōnere
Campania, see *Latin*
Capitol, *Capitolium*, -ii, n.
Capitoline Hill, *Capitōlium*, -ii, n.
car (motor), *autoraeda*, -ae
care for, *cūrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
Carthage, *Carthāgō*, -inis, f.
carrier pigeon, *columba internuntia*
carry, *portō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *gerō*, -ere,
gessi, *gestum* (3)
carry back, *reportō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
carry off, *dēportō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *abdūcō*,
-ere, -dūxi, -ductum (3)
carry on war, *bellum gerere*
catch (people), *prehendō*, -ere, -dī, -sum (3)
Ceres, see *Latin*
change into, *mūtō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) *in* +
acc.
children, *liberī*, -ōrum, m. pl., R89
city, *urbs*, *urbis*, f.
Claudius, *Claudius*, -ī, m., R64
clean, *pūrgō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
clemency, *clēmēntia*, -ae f.
clever, *callidus*, -a, -um, R59
close, *claudō*, -ere, *clausi*, *clausum* (3)
come, *veniō*, -īre, *vēni*, *ventum* (4)

command, 1. verb, *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussi*, *iussum* (2)
+ inf., R46; 2. noun, *mandātum*, -ī, n., R51a
commander, *imperātor*, -ōris, m.
commandment, *mandātum*, -ī, n., R51a; *sermō*,
-ōnis, m.
commence, *incipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3) +
inf., R46
comrade, *socius*, -ii, m., R65, 45a
conceal, *cēlō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1) + 2 acc., R58
concerning, *dē* (prep. + abl.), R55
confidence, *fidūcia*, -ae, f.
conquer, *vincō*, -ere, *vici*, *victum* (3); *superō*,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *victōriam reportāre*
consult, *cōsulō*, -ere, -uī, -sultum (3); **consult**
the interests of, *consulō* + dat.
contented, *contentus*, -a, -um, R59
Corinth, *Corinthus*, -ī, f.
Cornelius, *Cornēlius*, -ī, m., R64
cottage, *casa*, -ae, f.
counsel, *cōnsilium*, -ii, n., R51a
country, *terra*, -ae, f.
courage, *audācia*, -ae, f.
crafty, *callidus*, -a, -um, R59
Cremona, *Cremōna*, -ae, f. (city)
Crete, *Crēta*, -ae, f.
Croesus, see *Latin*
cry out, *clāmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *exclāmō*,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
Cupid, see *Latin Cupido*
Cyrus, see *Latin*

D

Daedalus, see *Latin*
dance, *saltō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
daring, *audācia*, -ae, f.
daughter, *fīlia*, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. -abus)
dawn, *dilūculum*, -ī, n., R51a
day before, the, *pridiē* (adv.)
December, of, December, -bris, -bre
decide, *cōstituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum (3) + inf.
Decius, see *Latin*
decorate, *ōrnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
deep, *altus*, -a, -um, R59
defeat, *vincō*, -ere, *vici*, *victum* (3); *superō*,
-āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
defend, *dēfendō*, -ere, -dī, -sum (3)
Delphi, *Delphī*, -ōrum, m. pl.
Demeter, see *Latin*
depart, *discēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (3)
destroy, *dēlēō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum (2)
determine, *cōstituō*, -ere, -uī, -ūtum (3) +
inf. R46
devastate, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
devise a scheme, *consilium capere*
Diana, see *Latin*
Dionysus, see *Latin*
direct, *regō*, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum* (3)
discretion, *prūdēntia*, -ae, f.
discussion, *sermō*, -ōnis, m.

disease, *morbus*, -ī, m., 45a
 dolphin, *delphinus*, -ī, m., R45a
 door, *iānuā*, -ae, f.
 Dora, *Dōra*, -ae, f.
 doubtful, *incertus*, -a, -um, R59
 dove, *columba*, -ae, f.
 drag along, *tractō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 dream, *somnium*, -iī, n., R51a
 drive away, *fugō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 drive out, *expellō*, -ere, -pulli, -pulsum (3)
 dwell, *habitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)

E

earth, *terra*, -ae, f.
 effort, *opera*, -ae, f.
 eight, *octō*, R84, 85
 empty, *vacuus*, -a -um, R59
 engage in battle, *proelium committere*
 enter, *intrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 entrance, *porta*, -ae, f.
 entrust, *committō*, -ere, -misi, -misum (3)
 Epeios, see *Latin*
 Epimetheus, see *Latin*
 equip (arm), *armō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 erect, *exaedificō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 Eros, see *Latin*
 err, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 escape, *vītō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 establish, *condō*, -ere, -didi, -ditum (3)
 Eutropius, see *Latin*
 even, *etiam* (adv.)
 evil, *malum*, -ī, n., R51a
 exclaim, *exclāmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 exertion, *opera*, -ae, f.
 expel, *expellō*, -ere, -puli, -pulsum (3)
 eye, *oculus*, -ī, m.

F

Fabius, *Fabius*, -ī, m., R64
 fall, *cadō*, -ere, cecidi, cāsum (3)
 farewell, *valē! valēte!* R90
 farmer, *agricola*, -ae, m.
 farm-house, *villa*, -ae, f.
 father, *pater*, -tris, m.
 fatherland, *patria*, -ae, f.
 Faustulus, see *Latin*
 fear, *timeō*, -ēre, -uī (2)
 February, of, *Februārius*, -a, -um, U10
 feeling, *animus*, -ī, m.
 fight, 1. verb, *pugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1);
 2. noun, *pugna*, -ae, f.
 fill up, *compleō*, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum (2) + abl. of
 thing (person)
 finally, *tandem* (adv.)
 first, *primus*, -a, -um, R59
 five, *quinque*, R84, 85
 flow, *fluō*, -ere, *fluxī*, *fluxum* (3)

fly, *volō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 fly away, *ēvolō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 fly out, *ēvolō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 for, *enim* (conj., second or third word); *nam*
 (conj., first word)
 forbid, *vetō*, -āre, -ui, *vetitum* (1) + inf., R46;
prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2) + inf., R46
 forest, *silva*, -ae, f.
 form, *fabricō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 formerly, *olim* (adv.)
 fort, *castrum*, -ī, n., R51a
 fortify, *mūniō*, -ire, -ivi, -itum (4)
 found, *condō*, -ere, -didi, -ditum (3)
 four, *quattuor*, R84, 85
 friend, *amica*, -ae, f. (fem.); *amicus*, -ī, m.,
 R45a
 frighten, *terreō*, -ēre, -ui, -itum (2)
 frog, *rāna*, -ae, f.
 from, *ā*, *ab* (prep. + abl.), V19; *ē*, *ex* (prep. +
 abl.), R48
 funeral pile, *rogus*, -ī, m.

G

Gabii, *Gabii*, -ōrum, m. pl. (town)
 gain a victory, *victōriam reportāre*
 game, *lūdus*, -ī, m., R45a
 garden, *hortus*, -ī, m., R45a
 gate, *porta*, -ae, f.
 Gaul, *Gallia*, -ae, f.; a Gaul, *Gallus*, -ī, m.,
 R45a
 Gellius, see *Latin*
 Germany, *Germānia*, -ae, f.
 gift, *dōnum*, -ī, n., R51a
 girl, *puella*, -ae, f.
 give, *dō*, -are, *dedi*, *datum* (1), R30
 go, *eō*, *ire*, *iī*, (*ivī*), *itum*
 go away, *discēdō*, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (3)
 god, *deus*, -ī, m. (declension irregular; see
 Book 2)
 goddess, *dea*, -ae, f. (dat. and abl. pl. -ābus)
 gold, *aurum*, -ī, n., R51 a
 golden, *aureus*, -a, -um, R59
 good, *bonus*, -a, -um, R59
 good-bye, *valē! valēte!* (R90)
 govern, *regō*, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum* (3)
 great, *magnus*, -a, -um, R59
 Greece, *Graecia*, -ae, f.
 Greek, *Graecus*, -a, -um, R59
 greet, *salūtō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 greetings, *salvē! salvēte!* (R90)
 grief, *miseria*, -ae, f.
 guard, *custodiō*, -ire, -ivi, -itum (4)

H

Hades, see *Latin*
 hail, *salvē! salvēte!* (R90)
 halt, *cōsistō*, -ere, -stiti, (-stitum), 3

happy, *beātus*, -a, -um; *laetus*, -a, -um, R59
hasten, *contendō*, -ere, -dī, -tum (3); *festinō*,
-āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
haul, *tractō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
have, *habēō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2); have in mind,
in animō habēre
he, *is* (is, ea, id), R79
head, *caput*, -itis, n.
hear, *audiō*, -īre, -ivī, -itum (4)
heavens, *caelum*, -ī, n., R51a
Hector, see Latin
Helen, *Helena*, -ae, f.
helmet, *galea*, -ae, f.
help, 1. verb, *adiuvō*, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum (1) +
inf., R46; 2. noun, *auxilium*, -iī, n., R51a
Henry *Henricus*, -ī, m.
Hephaestus, see Latin
her (own), *suus*, -a, -um, R59
Hera, *Hera*, -ae, f.
here, *hic* (adv.)
hereafter, *posthāc* (adv.)
Hermes, see Latin
hide, *cēlō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1) + 2 acc., R58
high, *altus*, -a, -um, R59
his (own), *suus*, -a, -um, R59
hold, *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
Homer, *Homērus*, -ī, m.
honour, *honus* (honor), -ōris, m.; with great
respect, *magno honore*
hope, *spēs*, *spēs*, f.
horse, *equus*, -ī, m., R45a
how, *quōmodo?* (interrogative adv.)
however, *tamen* (adv.); *autem* (conj., second
word)

I

I, *ego*, R71
Icarus, see Latin
Ides, *Idus*, -uum, f. pl., U10
if, *sī* (conj.), R34
ignorant, to be ignorant of, *nesciō*, -īre, -ivī
(-iī), -itum (4)
Ilium, *Īlium*, -iī, n. (Troy), R51a
ill, *aeger*, -gra, -grum, R76
immediately, *statim* (adv.)
in, *in* (prep. + abl.), R35
inactive, *piger*, -gra, -grum, R76
inhabitant, *incola*, -ae, c.
instruct, *ērudīō*, -īre, -ivī, -itum (4)
instruction, *disciplīna*, -ae, f.
intend, *in animō habēre*
into, *in* (prep. + acc.), R21
in vain, *frūstrā* (adv.)
invite, *invītō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
island, *insula*, -ae, f.
Italy, *Italia*, -ae, f.
it, *id* (is, ea, id), R79

J

January, of, *Iānuārius*, -a, -um, U10
Janus, *Iānus*, -ī, m., see Latin
jewel, *gemma*, -ae, f.
join battle, *proelium committere*
joke, *ridicula fābella*
journey, *iter*, -ineris, n.; to make a journey,
iter facere
Julia, *Iūlia*, -ae, f.
Julius, *Iūlius*, -ī, m., R64
July, of, *Iūlius*, -a, -um, U10
June, of, *Iūnius*, -a, -um, U10
Juno, *Iūno*, -ōnis, f., see Latin
Jupiter, *Iuppiter*, *Iovis*, m.

K

keep off, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
keep watch, *custōdiō*, -īre, -ivī, -itum (4)
kill, *necō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1); *occidō*, -ere,
-cidī, -cisum (3)
king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.
kingdom, *regnum*, -ī, n., R51a
know, *sciō*, -īre, *scīvī* (*scīī*), *scītum* (4)
knowledge, *scientia*, -ae, f.

L

laybyrith, *labyrinthus*, -ī, m., R45a
lament, *fleō*, -ēre, *flēvī*, *flētum* (2)
land, *terra*, -ae, f.
language, *lingua*, -ae, f.; the Latin language,
lingua Latīna
Laocoon, see Latin
Larentalia, see Latin
Lares, see Latin
large, *magnus*, -a, -um, R59
Latin, *Latīnus*, -a, -um, R59
Latins, the, *Latīnī*, -ōrum, m. pl.
Latium, *Latium*, -iī, n., R51a
Latona, *Lātōna*, -ae, f.
laugh, *rideō*, -ēre, *risī*, *risum* (2)
laugh at, *rideō*, -ēre, *risī*, *risum* (2)
Lauretta, *Lauretta*, -ae, f.
Lavinia, *Lāvīnia*, -ae, f.
Lavinium, *Lāvīnium*, -iī, n., R51a
lay, *collocō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
lay hold of, *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1) of
territory; *prehendō*, -ere, -hendī, -sum (3) of
people
lay waste, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (1)
lazy, *piger*, -gra, -grum, R76
lead, *dūcō*, -ere, *dūxī*, *ductum* (3)
learn, *discō*, *ere*, *didicī* (3)
leave, *relinquō*, -ere, -liquī, -lictum (3)
liberate, *liberō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (1)
lie down, *iaceō*, -ēre, -uī, (-citum), 2
life, *vīta*, -ae, f.
light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, f.
like, *amō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)

live, *habitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 Livius, see *Latin*
 Livy, see *Latin* *Līvius*
 lo! *ecce!* (adv.)
 London, *Londinium*, -ii, n., R51a
 long, 1. adj., *longus*, -a, -um, R59; 2. adv.,
 long, for a long time, *diū*
 long for, *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 look after, *cūrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 look at, *spectō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *adspiciō*
 (*aspiciō*), -ere, -spexi, -spectum (3)
 lord, *dominus*, -i, m., R45a
 love, 1. verb, *amō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); 2.
 noun, *amor*, -ōris, m.

M

machine, *māchina*, -ae, f.
 maiden, *virgo*, -inis, f.
 make, *fabricō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 make a plan, *consilium capere*
 make peaceful, *pacō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 man, *vir*, *virī*, m., R51b
 man the ships, *nāvēs complēre*; man the walls,
mūrōs complēre
 manner, *modus*, -i, m., in that manner (way),
eō modō; in this way, *hōc modō*
 many, *multus*, -a, -um, R41a, 59
 Mantua, *Mantua*, -ae, f.
 March, of, *Martius*, -a, -um, U10
 march rapidly, *contendō*, -ere, -dī, -tum (3)
 Marcus, *Marcus*, -i, m., R45a
 Marius, *Marius*, -i, m., R64
 Mars, see *Latin*
 Mary, *Maria*, -ae, f.
 master, *dominus*, -i, m., R45a
 Matthew, St., see *Latin* *Matthaei*
 May, of, *Māius*, -a, -um, U10
 maze, *labyrinthus*, -i, m., R45a
 meanwhile, *intereā* (adv.)
 measure, *modus*, -i, m., R45a
 medical doctor, *medicus*, -i, m., R45a
 medical practitioner, *medicus*, -i, m.
 Menelaus, see *Latin*
 Mercury, see *Latin* *Mercurius*
 mercy, *clēmētia*, -ae, f.
 messenger, *nūntius*, -iī, m., R65
 mind, *animus*, -i, m., R45a; to have in mind
 (intend), *in animō habēre*
 mine, *meus*, -a, -um, R77a
 Minerva, see *Latin*
 Minos, see *Latin*
 Minotaur, see *Latin* *Minōtaurus*
 miserable, *miser*, -era, -erum
 misery, *miseria*, -ae, f.
 mistaken, to be, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 mode, *modus*, -i, m., R45a
 money, *pecūnia*, -ae, f.; much money, *multum*
pecūniae

Monica, *Monica*, -ae, f.
 Morpheus, see *Latin*
 most of all, *maximē* (adv.)
 mouth, *ōs*, *ōris*, n.
 move, *migrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 much, *multum* (adv.); very much, *maximē*
 (adv.); much money, *multum pecūniae*
 music, *mūsica*, -ae, f.
 my, *meus*, -a, -um, R77a

N

name, 1. verb, *appellō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1);
 2. noun, *nōmen*, -inis, n.; by name, *nōmine*
 Naples, *Neāpolis*, -is, f., (acc. -im)
 narrate, *nārō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 nation, *nātio*, -ōnis, f.
 near, *ad* (prep. + acc.), R21, 22; *apud* (prep.
 + acc.), R21
 nearby, *vicīnus*, -a, -um, R59
 neighbouring, *vicīnus*, -a, -um; *finitimus*, -a,
 -um; *propinquus*, -a, -um, R59
 Neptune, see *Latin* *Neptūnus*
 never, *numquam*, *nunquam* (adv.)
 nevertheless, *tamen* (adv.)
 new, *novus*, -a, -um, R59
 next, *deinde* (adv.)
 Nigeria, see *Latin*
 night, in the night, *noctū*
 nine, *novem*, R84, 85
 Nones, *Nonae*, -ārum, f. pl., U10
 not, *nōn* (adv.)
 not to know, *nesciō*, -īre, -īvi, (-iī), -itum (4)
 not yet, *nōndum* (adv.)
 November, *November*, -bris, -bre, U10
 now, *nunc* (adv.), V18; *iam* (adv.), V18
 Numitor, see *Latin*

O

October, of, *Octōber*, -bris, -bre, U10
 Odysseus, see *Latin* *Ulixēs*
 offer, *praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
 often, *saepe* (adv.)
 of wood (wooden), *ligneus*, -a, -um
 Olympus, *Olympus*, -i, m., R45a
 on, in (prep. + abl.), R35
 once upon a time, *ōlim* (adv.)
 one, *ūnus*, -a, -um, R84 — 86
 open, *aperiō*, -īre, -uī, -pertum (4)
 oracle, *ōrāculum*, -i, n., R51a
 order, 1. verb, *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussum* (2) +
 inf., R46; 2. noun, *mandātum*, -i, n., R51a
 ought, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2) + inf., R46
 our, *noster*, -tra, -trum, R76
 out of, *ē*, *ex* (prep. + abl.), R48
 outside, *extrā* (prep. + acc.), R21
 overcome, *superō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 owe, *dēbeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)

P

pacify, *pācō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 Padua, see *Latin*
 Palatine Hill, *Palātium*, -iī, n., R51a
 Pandora, see *Latin*
 Paris, see *Latin*
 Patroclus, see *Latin*
 Paul, *Paulus*, -ī, m., R45a
 Penates, see *Latin*
 Pentheseilea, see *Latin*
 people, the, *populus*, -ī, m.; race, *nātio* -ōnis, f.
 perhaps, *fortasse* (adv)
 Persephone, see *Latin*
 Persians, *Persae*, -ārum, m. pl.
 Peter, *Petrus*, -ī, m., R45a
 Phaedrus, see *Latin*
 Philip, *Philippus*, -ī, m., R45a
 philosopher, *philosophus*, -ī, m., R45a
 pig, *porcus*, -ī, m., R45a
 pirate, *pirāta*, -ae, m.
 pitch camp, *castra ponere*
 place, 1. verb. *collocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1);
pōnō, -ere, *posuī*, *positum* (3); pitch camp,
castra pōnere; 2. noun, *locus*, -ī, m.; pl.
loci, -ōrum, n.
 plan, *consilium*, -iī, n., R51a; make a plan,
consilium capere; suggest a plan, *consilium*
dare
 plane (aero), *māchina volāns*; by (aero)plane,
per māchinam volantem
 Pluto, see *Latin*
 poet, *poēta*, -ae, m.
 Poseidon, see *Latin*
 pounds, see *Latin librae*
 praise, *laudō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 present, *dōnum*, -ī, n., R51a
 Pretoria, *Pretōria*, -ae, f.
 prevent, *prohibeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2) + inf., R46
 Priam, see *Latin Priamus*
 Prometheus, see *Latin*
 Proserpina, see *Latin*
 punish, *pūnio*, -īre, -ivī, -itum (4)
 pupil, *discipulus*, -ī, m., R45a
 put to flight, *fugō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)

Q

queen, *rēgīna*, -ae, f.

R

ravage, *vāstō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 raven, *corvus*, -ī, m., R45a
 race (nation), *nātio*, -ōnis, f.
 reach, *pervenīō*, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum (4) *ad* + acc.
 read, *legō*, -ere, *lēgī*, *lēctum* (3)
 realm, *rēgnum*, -ī, n., R51a
 receive, *accipiō*, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum (3)
 refuse, *recūsō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 relate, *nārrō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)

remain, *maneō*, -ēre, *mansi*, *mansum* (2)
 remaining, *cēteri*, -ae, -a R59
 Remus, *Remus*, -ī, m., R45a
 reply, *respondeō*, -ēre, -dī, -sum (2)
 report, *nūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
 reprove, *culpō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 respect, with great respect, *magnō honōre*
 rest, the rest, *cēteri*, -ae, -a, R59
 Rhea Silvia, see *Latin*
 Rhodesia, see *Latin*
 river, *flūmen*, -inis, n.
 roam, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 rock, *saxum*, -ī, n., R51a
 Roman, 1. noun, *Rōmānus*, -ī, m., R45a; 2.
 adj., *Rōmānus*, -a, -um, R59
 Rome, *Rōma*, -ae, f.
 Romulus, *Rōmulus*, -ī, m., R45a
 rose, *rosa*, -ae, f.
 round, *circum* (prep. + acc.), R56
 rout, *fugō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 rule, *regō*, -ere, *rēxi*, *rēctum* (3)
 run, *currō*, -ere, *cucurri*, *cursum* (3)
 Rutuli, see *Latin*

S

Sabine, *Sabinus*, -a, -um, R59
 Sabines, the, *Sabīni*, -ōrum, m. pl., R45a
 Sabini, the, *Sabīni*, -ōrum, m. pl., R45a
 sacred, *sacer*, -era, -crum, R76
 sail, *nāvigō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 sailor, *nauta*, -ae, m.
 salt, *sal*, *salis*, m. (and n.)
 satisfied, *contentus*, -a, -um, R59
 Saturn, see *Latin Sātturnus*
 save, *servō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 say, *dīcō*, -ere, *dīxi*, *dictum* (3)
 scare, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (3)
 scholar, *discipulus*, -ī, m., R45a
 school, *lūdus*, -ī, m., R45a
 Scotland, *Calēdonia*, -ae, f.
 sculpture, *sculptūra*, -ae, f.
 second time, a, *iterum* (adv.)
 see, *videō*, -ēre, *vidī*, *visum* (2); see! (lo!),
ecce! (adv.)
 seize, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpī*, *captum* (3); *occupō*, -āre,
 -āvī, -ātum (1) of territory; *rapiō*, -ēre, *rapuī*,
raptum (3) of people; *prehendō*, -ere, -dī,
 -sum (3) of people
 send, *mittō*, -ere, *mīsī*, *missum* (3)
 September, of, *September*, -bris, -bre
 set, *collocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 set free, *liberō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 seven, *septem*, R84, 85
 sharp, *acūtus*, -a, -um, R59
 she, *ea* (is, ea, id), R79
 she-wolf, *lupa*, -ae, f.
 shield, *scūtum*, -ī, n., R51a
 ship, *nāvigium*, -iī, n., R51a
 shore, *ōra*, -ae, f.

shout, *clāmō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 show, *praebeō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
 shrewd, *callidus*, -a, -um, R59
 shut, *claudō*, -ere, *clausi*, *clausum* (3)
 sick, *aeger*, -gra, -grum, R76
 sign, *signum*, -ī, n., R51a
 signal, *signum*, -ī, n., R51a
 silent, to be, *taceō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
 Silvia, *Silvia*, -ae, f.
 sing, *cantō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 sister, *soror*, -ōris, f.
 six, *sex*, R84, 85
 sky, *caelum*, -ī, n., R51a
 slave, *servus*, -ī, m., R45a
 slay, *necō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1); *occidō*, -ere, -cidi, -cīsum (3)
 small, *parvus*, -a, -um, R59
 snatch, *rapiō*, -ere, *rapuī*, *raptum* (3) of people
 soldier, *mīles*, -itīs, m.
 Solon, see *Latin*
 sometimes, *nōnnumquam*, *nōnnumquam* (adv.)
 son, *filius*, -iī, m., R64
 soon, *mox* (adv.)
 so then, *ergō* (adv.)
 South Africa, *Āfrica Meridiāna*, -ae, -ae, f.
 Spain, *Hispania*, -ae, f.
 Sparta, *Sparta*, -ae, f.
 spear, *hasta*, -ae, f.
 spectacle, *spectāculum*, -ī, n., R51a
 station, *collocō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 statue, *statua*, -ae, f.
 stay, *maneō*, -ēre, *mansi*, *mansum* (2)
 Stella, *Stella*, -ae, f.
 story, *fābula*, -ae, f.; little story, *fābella*, -ae, f.
 stray, *errō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 strong, 1. verb, to be strong, *valeō*, -ēre, -uī (2);
 2. adj., *validus*, -a, -um, R59
 sturdy, *validus*, -a, -um, R59
 suddenly, *subitō* (adv.)
 sword, *gladius*, -iī, m., R65, 45a

T

table, *mēnsa*, -ae, f.
 take, *capiō*, -ere, *cēpi*, *captum* (3)
 take by storm, *expugnō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 take one's stand, *cōsistō*, -ere, -stiti, (-stitum), 3
 tale, *fābula*, -ae, f.
 talk, *sermō*, -ōnis, m.
 Talus, see *Latin*
 Tanzania, see *Latin*
 Tarpeia, see *Latin*
 Tarpeius, see *Latin*
 Tatius, see *Latin*
 teach, *doceō*, -ēre, -uī, *doctum* (2), R47; *ērudīō*, -īre, -ivī, -itum (4)
 teacher, *magistra*, -ae, f. (fem.); *magister*, -trī, m., R45b
 teaching, *disciplina*, -ae, f.
 television, *tēleorāma*, -ae

tell, *dicō*, -ere, *dixi*, *dictum* (3); tell me, *dic mihi*
 ten, *decem*, R84, 85
 tent, *tabernāculum*, -ī, n., R51a
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, R59
 terrify, *terreō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
 Thames, see *Latin Tamesis*
 that, *is*, *ea*, *id*, R79 (demonstrative adj.)
 then, *deinde* (adv.); *tum* (adv.)
 therefore, *itaque*, *ergō* (adv.)
 Theseus, see *Latin*
 three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*, R84 — 86
 through, *per* (prep. + acc.), R21
 throw, *coniciō*, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum (3)
 thus, *itaque* (adv.)
 Tiber, *Tiberis*, -is, m. (acc. -im)
 to, *ad* (prep. + acc.), R21, 22
 to be, *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, R94
 together with, *cum* (prep. + abl.), R78
 too, *quoque* (adv.)
 towards, *ad* (prep. + acc.); *in* (prep. + acc.), R21, 22
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, n., R51a
 Trojan, 1. noun. *Trōiānus*, -ī, m., R45a; 2. adj., *Trōiānus*, -a, -um, R59
 Troy, *Trōia*, -ae, f.
 trust, *fidūcia*, -ae, f.
 Turnus, see *Latin*
 twelve, *duodecim*
 twice, *bis*
 two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, R84 — 86

U

Ulysses, see *Latin Ulixēs*
 uncertain, *incertus*, -a, -um, R59
 understanding, *prudentia*, -ae, f.
 undertake, *suscipiō*, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum (3)
 Underworld, *Inferī*, -ōrum, m. pl., *Hades*

V

Valerius, see *Latin*
 Venus, see *Latin*
 Vera, *Vēra*, -ae, f.
 Vergilius, see *Latin*
 Verona, *Vērōna*, -ae, f. (city)
 Veronica, *Vērōnica*, -ae, f.
 very, *valdē* (adv.)
 very much, *maximē*, *valde* (adv.)
 vessel, *nāvigium*, -iī, n., R51a
 Vesta, see *Latin*
 Vesuvius, see *Latin*
 vex, *vexō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 victory, *victōria*, -ae, f.; to gain a victory, *victōriam reportāre*
 visit, *visitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum (1)
 void, *vacuus*, -a, -um, R59
 Vulcan, see *Latin Vulcānus*

W

wage war, *bellum gerere*
walk, *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
wall, *mūrus*, -ī, m., R45a
wander, *errō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
war, *bellum*, -ī, n., R51a
warn, *moneō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum (2)
wash, *lavō*, -āre, lāvī, (lautum), 1
watch, *spectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1); *adspiciō* (*aspiciō*), -ere, -spexī, -spectum (3)
water, *aqua*, -ae, f.
wave, *unda*, -ae, f.
we, *nōs*, R71
weapons, *arma*, -ōrum, n. pl., R89
weep, *fleō*, -ēre, flēvī, flētum (2)
well, *bene* (adv.)
well in health, to be, *salveō*, -ēre; **greetings!**
 hail! salvē! salvēte!
when, 1. conj., *ubi*, R25, 34; 2. interrogative
 adv. *quandō?*
where, *ubi?* (interrogative adv.)
while, *dum* (conj.), R57, 44
white, *albus*, -a, -um, R59
why, *cūr?* (interrogative adv.)
wicked, *malus*, -a, -um, R59
wife, *uxor*, -ōris, f.
window, *fenestra*, -ae, f.

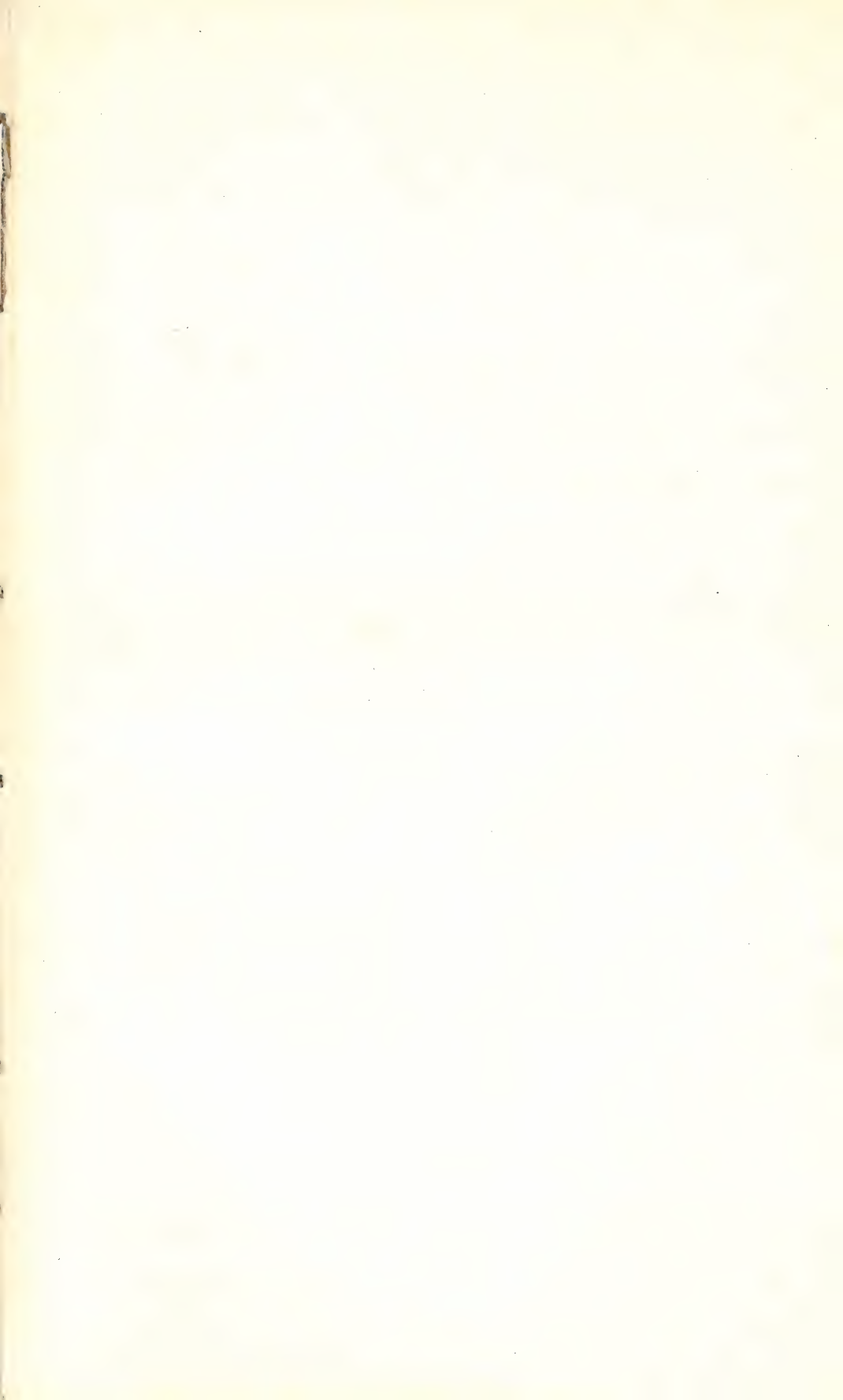
wine, *vīnum*, -ī, n., R51a
wing, *āla*, -ae, f.
wisdom, *sapientia*, -ae, f.; *prudentia*, -ae, f.
wish for, *dēsiderō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
with, *cum* (prep. + abl.), R78
woman, *fēmina*, -ae, f.
wonderful, *mirābilis*, -is, -e; **wonderful to relate**,
 mirābile dictū
wood, *silva*, -ae, f.
wooden, of wood, *ligneus*, -a, -um, R59
word, *verbum*, -ī, n., R51a
work, work hard, *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
world, *mundus*, -ī, m., R45a
wound, *vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum (1)
write, *scribō*, -ere, *scripsī*, *scriptum* (3)

Y

year, *annus*, -ī, m., R45a
yesterday, *herī* (adv.)
you (s.), *tū*, R71; **you** (pl.), *vōs*, R71
your, (s.), *tuus*, -a, -um, R59; **pl.**, *vester*, -tra, -trum, R76

Z

Zambia, *Zambia*, -ae, f.
Zeus, see *Latin*



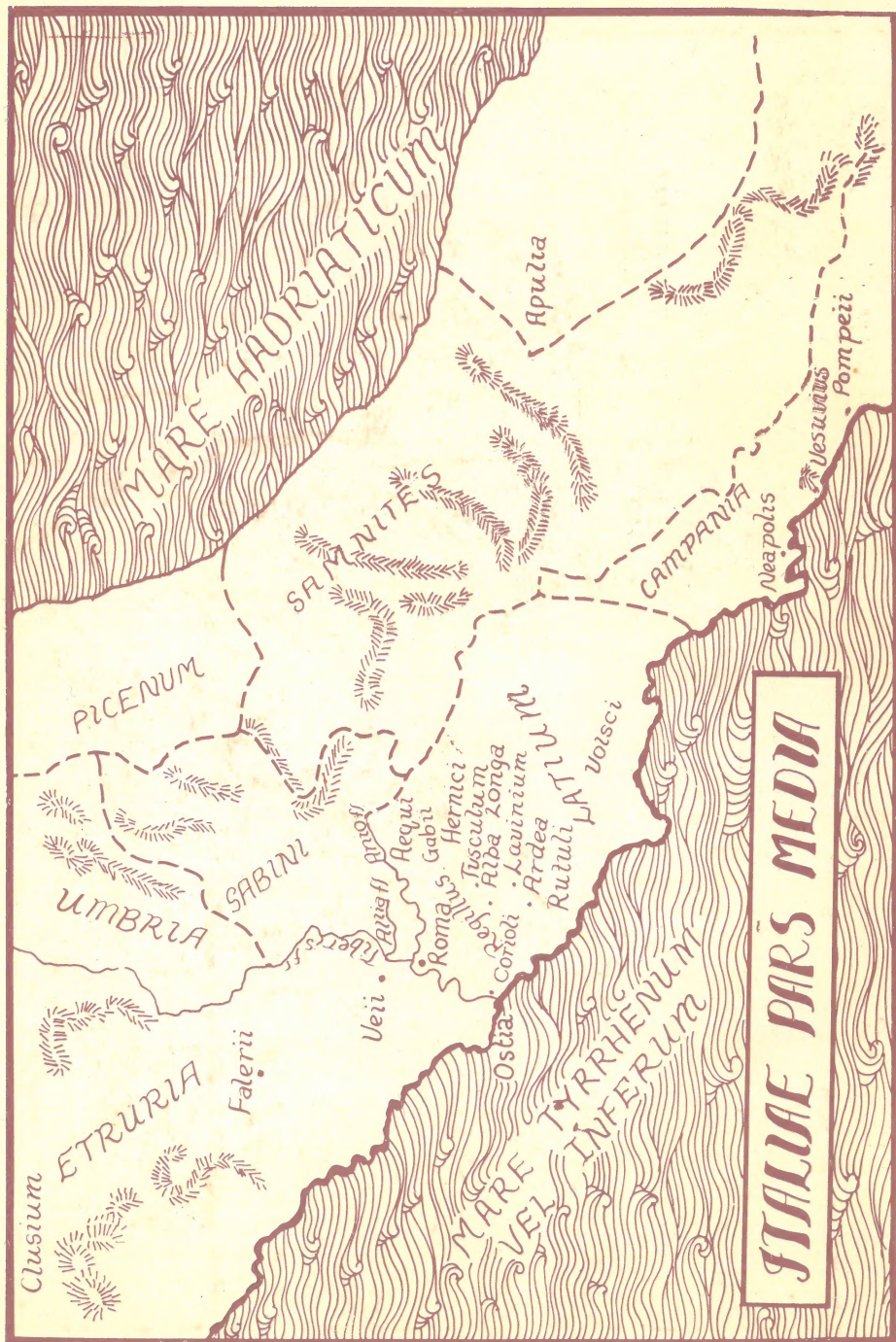
TRANSVAAL
EDUCATION DEPARTMENT
GERMISTON HIGH SCHOOL

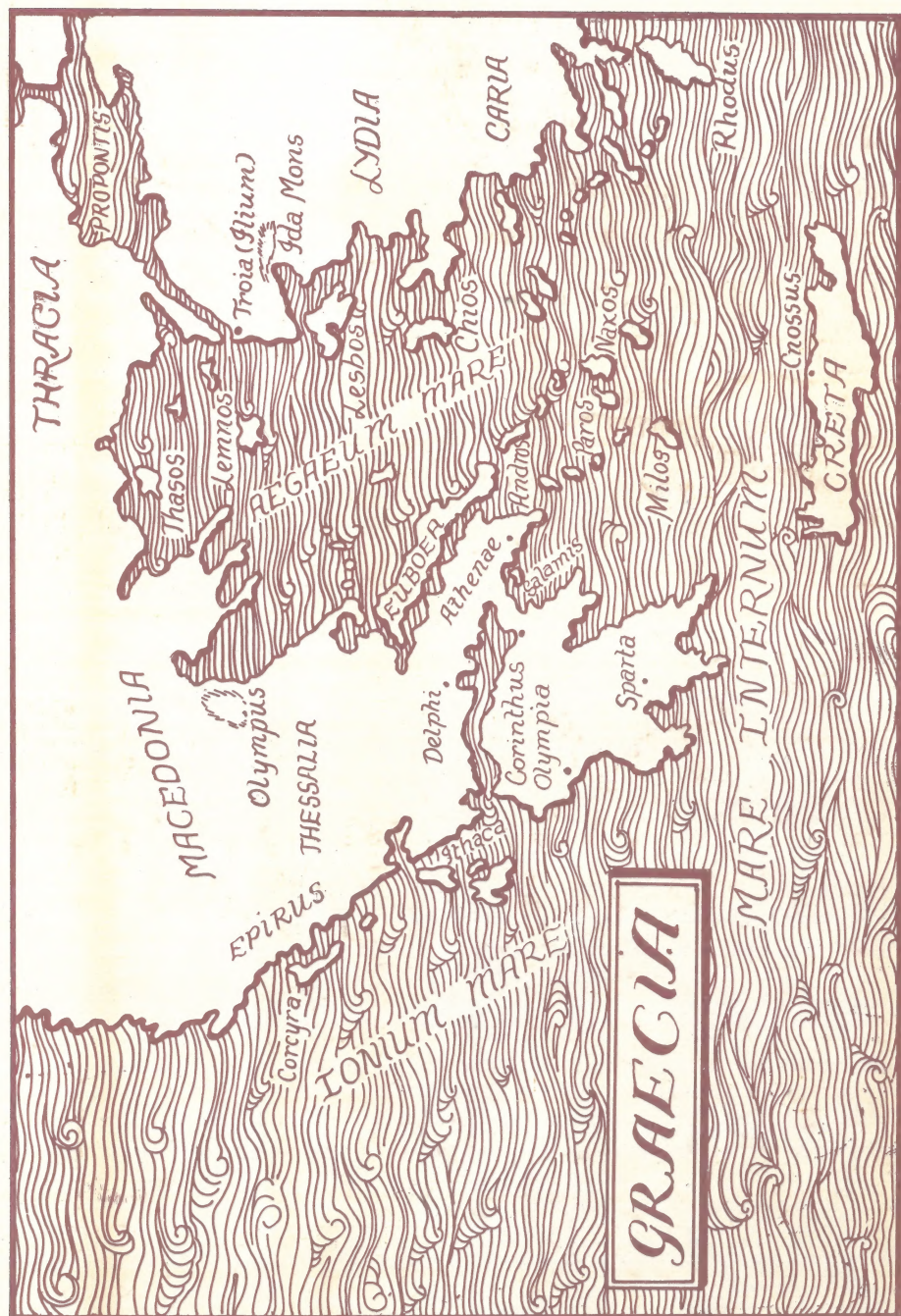
16 NOV 1971

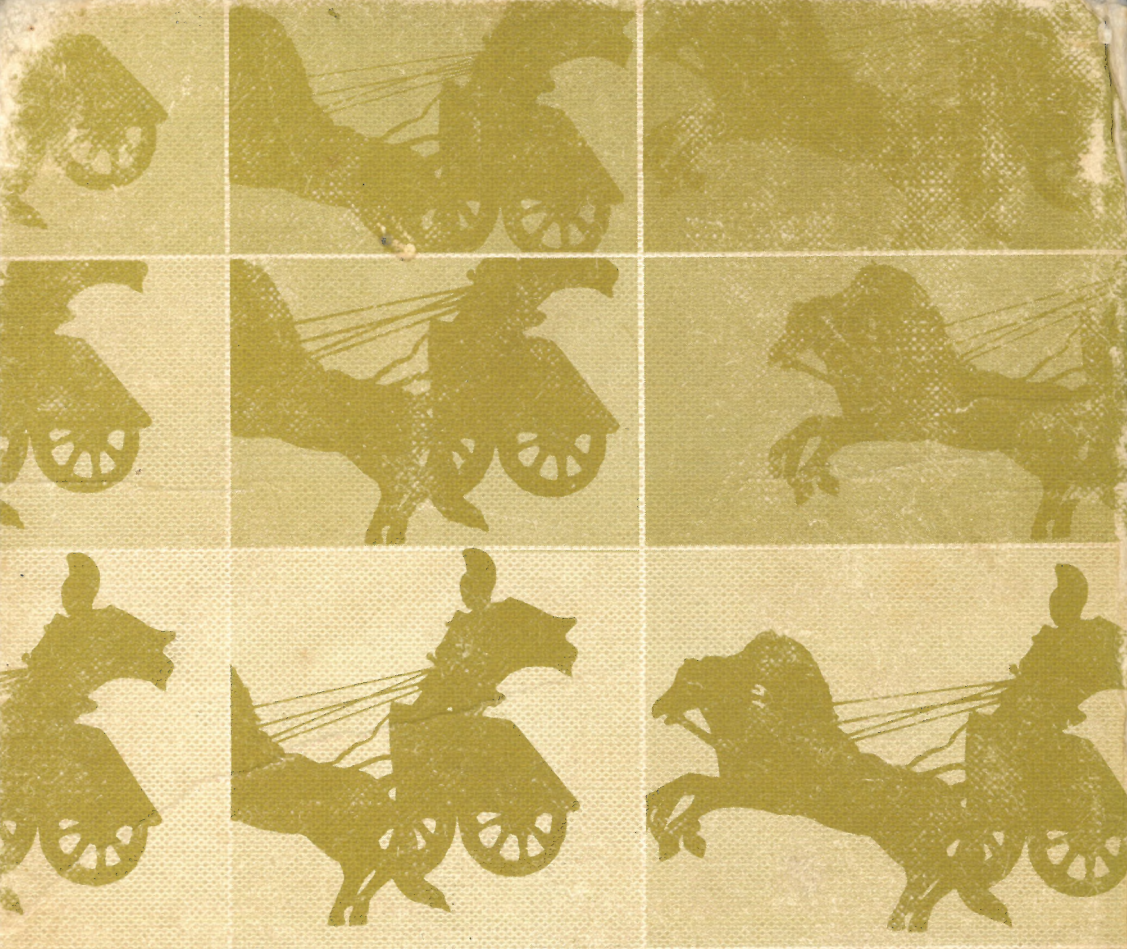
P.O. Box 95 GERMISTON

WITWATERSRAND EAST
SCHOOL BOARD











The way to Latin Book 1

C.S. Heyneke H. Cunningham

Book 1
C.S. Heyneke
H. Cunningham

The way to Latin